The fontspec package

WILL ROBERTSON and KHALED HOSNY will.robertson@latex-project.org

2010/10/13 v2.1c

C	onte	nts			7.4	Different features for	
						different font shapes .	14
1	Histo	ry	3		7.5	Different features for	
						different font sizes	15
2	Intro	duction	3				
	2.1	About this manual	3	8		ndependent options	16
	2.2	Acknowledgements	4		8.1	Colour	16
					8.2	Scale	17
3		ge loading and options	4		8.3	Interword space	17
	3.1	Maths fonts adjustments	5		8.4	Post-punctuation space	18
	3.2	Configuration	5		8.5	The hyphenation char-	
	3.3	Warnings	5			acter	18
					8.6	Optical font sizes	19
I	Gen	eral font selection	5				
				II	Ope	enType	20
4	Font s	selection	6		- 1) F =	
	4.1	By font name	6	9	Introd	luction	20
	4.2	By file name	6		9.1	How to select font fea-	
		•				tures	21
5	Defau	ılt font families	8				
				10	_	lete listing of Open-	
6		commands to select font				font features	21
	famil		8		10.1	Ligatures	
	6.1	More control over font			10.2	Letters	22
		shape selection	10		10.3	Numbers	23
	6.2	Math(s) fonts	11		10.4	Contextuals	24
	6.3	Miscellaneous font se-			10.5	Vertical Position	24
		lecting details	12		10.6	Fractions	26
					10.7	Stylistic Set variations	26
7		ting font features	12		10.8	Character Variants	27
	7.1	Default settings	12		10.9	Alternates	27
	7.2	Changing the currently			10.10	Style	27
		selected features	13		10.11	Diacritics	29
	7.3	Priority of feature selec-			10.12	Kerning	29
		tion	13		10.13	Font transformations .	30

10.14 Annotation 10.15 CJK shape		I	naming existing fe	atures 45
10.16 Character width 10.17 Vertical typesett	ing 33		ogramming details	46
10.18 OpenType scrip languages		VI	The patching/imμ ΓεΧ2ε and other	
III LuaT _E X-only fon	t fea-	ages	L	47
tures	34	1 10 Inc	ner emphasis	48
11 OpenType font feature	files 34	1	icode footnote symb	
		20 011	neode roomote syme	7013
IV Fonts and fea	tures	21 Ve	rbatim	48
with $X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{1}}X$	37	7 22 Dis	scretionary hyphena	tion: \- 48
12 X _T T _E X-only font feature				
12.1 Mapping			fontspec.sty	49
12.2 Letter spacing .12.3 Different font ted			plementation	49
gies: AAT and ICU			•	
12.4 Optical font size			1	
1			messages	
13 Mac OS X's AAT fonts	39		3 Option processing	ng 54
13.1 Ligatures			0	
13.2 Letters			O	
13.3 Numbers				
13.4 Contextuals 13.5 Vertical position		.	U	
13.5 Vertical position 13.6 Fractions			8 expl3 interface for loading	
13.7 Variants			•	
13.8 Alternates				
13.9 Style				
13.10 CJK shape		I		
13.11 Character width		2 23.	•	
13.12 Vertical typesett	ing 42	2	-	
13.13 Diacritics		X /TTT	C	100
13.14 Annotation	43	3 VIII	fontspec.lua	106
14 AAT & Multiple Master axes	er font 43	3 IX f	fontspec-patches. 14 Unicode footnot	
		23.	bols	•
V Programming inte	erface 44	23.		
		23.	1	
15 Defining new features	44	23.	17 Verbatims	
16 Going behind fontspec	s back 45	1	ontspec.cfg	112

1 History

This package began life as a LATEX interface to select system-installed Mac OS X fonts in Jonathan Kew's XHTEX, the first widely-used Unicode extension to TEX. Over time, XHTEX was extended to support OpenType fonts and then was ported into a cross-platform program to run also on Windows and Linux.

More recently, LuaTEX is fast becoming the TEX engine of the day; it supports Unicode encodings and OpenType fonts and opens up the internals of TEX via the Lua programming language. Hans Hagen's ConTEXt Mk. IV is a re-write of his powerful typesetting system, taking full advantage of LuaTeX's features including font support; a kernel of his work in this area has been extracted to be useful for other TeX macro systems as well, and this has enabled fontspec to be adapted for LateX when run with the LuaTeX engine. Elie Roux and Khaled Hosny have been instrumental and invaluable with this development work.

2 Introduction

The fontspec package allows users of either X_{\text{T}} TeX or LuaTeX to load OpenType fonts in a LaTeX document. No font installation is necessary, and font features can be selected and used as desired throughout the document.

Without fontspec, it is necessary to write cumbersome font definition files for LATEX, since LATEX's font selection scheme (known as the 'NFSS') has a lot going on behind the scenes to allow easy commands like \emph or \bfseries. With an uncountable number of fonts now available for use, however, it becomes less desirable to have to write these font definition (.fd) files for every font one wishes to use.

Because fontspec is designed to work in a variety of modes, this user documentation is split into separate sections that are designed to be relatively independent. Nonetheless, the basic functionality all behaves in the same way, so previous users of fontspec under X¬T¬X should have little or no difficulty switching over to LuaT¬X.

This manual can get rather in-depth, as there are a lot of details to cover. See the example documents fontspec-xetex.tex and fontspec-luatex.tex for a complete minimal example with each engine.

2.1 About this manual

This document is typeset with pdfIATEX using pre-compiled examples that have been generated by either XATEX or LuaTEX. You may regenerate the examples by removing the doc-files/ subdirectory and typesetting the manual with the following invocation:

```
pdflatex -shell-escape fontspec.dtx
```

Note that many of the examples use fonts that are not included in TEX Live or MiKTeX, and some of them are non-free fonts that must be purchased.

I'd like to reduce the number of non-free fonts used in this manual. If you know any freely available fonts that could be used as alternative to any of the fonts in this

document, please suggest them to me. Finally, if any aspect of the documentation is unclear or you would like to suggest more examples that could be made, get in touch. (Contributions especially welcome.)

2.2 Acknowledgements

This package couldn't be possible without the early and continued support the author of X_HT_EX, Jonathan Kew. When I started this package, he steered me many times in the right direction.

I've had great feedback over the years on feature requests, documentation queries, bug reports, font suggestions, and so on from lots of people all around the world. Many thanks to you all.

Thanks to David Perry for numerous documentation improvements and contributing the text for one of the sections of this manual.

Special thanks to Khaled Hosny, who had been the driving force behind the support for Lual ATEX, ultimately leading to version 2.0 of the package.

3 Package loading and options

For basic use, no package options are required:

\usepackage{fontspec}

xunicode Ross Moore's xunicode package is now automatically loaded for users of both XHIFEX and LualFTEX. This package provides backwards compatibility with LFTEX's methods for accessing extra characters and accents (for example, \%, \\$, \textbullet, \"u, and so on), plus many more Unicode characters. Warning: introduced in v2.1, this is a backwards incompatible change to previous versions of fontspec. This change was necessary in order to provide consistent support for users of XHTEX and LuaTEX. I'm not aware of any issues this may cause but please let me know if you run into problems.

X_HTEX users only The xltxtra package adds some minor extra features to X_HLATEX, including, via the metalogo package, the \XeTeX macro to typeset the X_HTEX logo. While this package was previously recommended, it serves a much smaller rôle nowadays and generally will not be required.

LuaTeX users only In order to load fonts by their name rather than by their filename (*e.g.*, 'Latin Modern Roman' instead of 'ec-lmr10'), you may need to run the script mkluatexfontdb, which is distributed with the luaotfload package. Note that if you do not execute this script beforehand, the first time you attempt to typeset the process will pause for (up to) several minutes. (But only the first time.) Please see the luaotfload documentation for more information.

babel *The babel package is not really supported!* Especially Vietnamese, Greek, and Hebrew at least might not work correctly, as far as I can tell. There's a better chance with Cyrillic and Latin-based languages, however—fontspec ensures at least that fonts should load correctly, but hyphenation and other matters aren't guaranteed. Under XaTeX, the polyglossia package is recommended instead as a modern replacement for babel.

3.1 Maths fonts adjustments

By default, fontspec adjusts LaTeX's default maths setup in order to maintain the correct Computer Modern symbols when the roman font changes. However, it will attempt to avoid doing this if another maths font package is loaded (such as mathpazo or the unicode-math package).

If you find that fontspec is incorrectly changing the maths font when it should be leaving well enough alone, apply the <code>[no-math]</code> package option to manually suppress its maths font.

3.2 Configuration

If you wish to customise any part of the fontspec interface (see later in this manual, Section 15 on page 44 and Section 17), this should be done by creating your own fontspec.cfg file, which will be automatically loaded if it is found by X₂TeX or LuaTeX. Either place it in the same folder as the main document for isolated cases, or in a location that X₂TeX or LuaTeX searches by default; *e.g.* in MacTeX: ~/Library/texmf/tex/latex/. The package option [no-config] will suppress this behaviour under all circumstances.

3.3 Warnings

This package can give many warnings that can be harmless if you know what you're doing. Use the [quiet] package option to write these warnings to the transcript (.log) file instead.

Use the [silent] package option to completely suppress these warnings if you don't even want the .log file cluttered up.

Part I

General font selection

This section concerns the variety of commands that can be used to select fonts.

```
\label{eq:continuous} $$ \left( font \ features \right) = \left( font \ name \right) $$ \left( font \ name \right) $$
```

These are the main font-selecting commands of this package. The \fontspec command selects a font for one-time use; all others should be used to define the standard fonts used in a document. They will be described later in this section.

The font features argument accepts comma separated $\langle font\ feature \rangle = \langle option \rangle$ lists; these are described in later:

- For general font features, see Section 8 on page 16
- For OpenType fonts, see Part II on page 20
- For X¬T¬EX-only general font features, see Part IV on page 37
- For LuaT_FX-only general font features, see Part III on page 34
- For features for AAT fonts in X¬T¬X, see Section 13 on page 39

4 Font selection

In both LuaTeX and XaTeX, fonts can be selected either by 'font name' or by 'file name'.

4.1 By font name

Fonts known to LuaTeX or XeTeX may be loaded by their names. 'Known to' in this case generally means 'exists in a standard fonts location' such as $^{\sim}$ /Library/Fonts on Mac OS X, or C:\Windows\Fonts on Windows.

The simplest example might be something like

```
\fontspec[ ... ]{Cambria}
```

in which the bold and italic fonts will be found automatically (if they exist) and are immediately accessible with the usual \textit and \textbf commands.

TODO: add explanation for how to find out what the 'font name' is.

4.2 By file name

XaTeX and LuaTeX also allow fonts to be loaded by file name instead of font name. When you have a very large collection of fonts, you will sometimes not wish to have them all installed in your system's font directories. In this case, it is more convenient to load them from a different location on your disk. This technique is also necessary in XaTeX when loading OpenType fonts that are present within your TeX distribution, such as /usr/local/texlive/2010/texmf-dist/fonts/opentype/public. Fonts in such locations are visible to XaTeX but cannot be loaded by font name, only file name; LuaTeX does not have this restriction.

When selecting fonts by file name, any font that can be found in the default search paths may be used directly (including in the current directory) without having to explicitly define the location of the font file on disk.

X $_{\overline{1}}$ TEX & Mac users only: Note that X $_{\overline{1}}$ TEX can only select fonts in this way with the xdvipdfmx driver, but X $_{\overline{1}}$ TEX with the xdv2pdf driver can only select systeminstalled fonts by font name and not file name. The xdvipdfmx driver is default for X $_{\overline{1}}$ TEX, so this is only a problem if you wish to explicitly use the xdv2pdf driver.

Fonts selected by filename must include bold and italic variants explicitly.

```
\fontspec
  [ BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold.otf ,
    ItalicFont = texgyrepagella-italic.otf ,
    BoldItalicFont = texgyrepagella-bolditalic.otf ]
  {texgyrepagella-regular.otf}
```

fontspec knows that the font is to be selected by file name by the presence of the '.otf' extension. An alternative is to specify the extension separately, as shown following:

```
\fontspec
  [ Extension = .otf ,
    BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold ,
    ... ]
  {texgyrepagella-regular}
```

If desired, an abbreviation can be applied to the font names based on the mandatory 'font name' argument:

```
\fontspec
  [ Extension = .otf ,
    UprightFont = *-regular ,
    BoldFont = *-bold ,
    ... ]
  {texgyrepagella}
```

In this case 'texgyrepagella' is no longer the name of an actual font, but is used to construct the font names for each shape; the * is replaced by 'texgyrepagella'. Note in this case that UprightFont is required for constructing the font name of the normal font to use.

To load a font that is not in one of the default search paths, its location in the filesystem must be specified with the Path feature:

Note that X₃T_EX and LuaT_EX are able to load the font without giving an extension, but fontspec must know to search for the file; this can can be indicated by declaring the font exists in an 'ExternalLocation':

Example 1: Loading the default, sans serif, and monospaced fonts.

```
\setmainfont{TeX Gyre Bonum}
\setsansfont[Scale=MatchLowercase]{Latin Modern Sans}
\setmonofont[Scale=MatchLowercase]{Inconsolata}
```

Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs
Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs
Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs

\rmfamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs\par
\sffamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs\par
\ttfamily Pack my box with five dozen liquor jugs

```
\fontspec
  [ ExternalLocation ,
    BoldFont = texgyrepagella-bold ,
    ... ]
  {texgyrepagella-regular}
```

To be honest, Path and ExternalLocation are actually the same feature with different names. The former can be given without an argument and the latter can be given with one; the different names are just for clarity.

5 Default font families

These commands are used to select the default font families for the entire document. They take the same arguments as \fontspec. See Example 1. Here, the scales of the fonts have been chosen to equalise their lowercase letter heights. The Scale font feature will be discussed further in Section 8 on page 16, including methods for automatic scaling.

6 New commands to select font families

For cases when a specific font with a specific feature set is going to be re-used many times in a document, it is inefficient to keep calling \fontspec for every use. While the \fontspec command does not define a new font instance after the first call, the feature options must still be parsed and processed.

\newfontfamily

For this reason, new commands can be created for loading a particular font family with the \newfontfamily command, demonstrated in Example 2. This macro should be used to create commands that would be used in the same way as \rmfamily, for example. If you would like to create a command that only changes

Example 2: Defining new font families. \text{\newfontfamily\notefont{Kurier}}} This is a note. \text{\notefont This is a \emph{\note}}. Example 3: Defining a single font face. \text{\newfontface\fancy}} \text{\newfontface\fancy} \text{\left{\Contextuals={WordInitial, WordFinal}}} \text{\fancy where is all the vegemite}} \text{\definition{\fancy where is all the vegemite}} \text{\left{\left{\left{\left}\left{\left{\left}\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\left{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left}\reft{\left{\left}\reft{

the font inside its argument (i.e., the same behaviour as \emph) define it using regular LATEX commands:

```
\newcommand\textnote[1]{{\notefont #1}}
\textnote{This is a note.}
```

Note that the double braces are intentional; the inner pair are used to to delimit the scope of the font change.

\newfontface

Sometimes only a specific font face is desired, without accompanying italic or bold variants being automatically selected. This is common when selecting a fancy italic font, say, that has swash features unavailable in the upright forms. \newfontface is used for this purpose, shown in Example 3, which is repeated in Section 13.4 on page 40.

Comment for advanced users: The commands defined by \newfontface and \newfontfamily include their encoding information, so even if the document is set to use a legacy TeX encoding, such commands will still work correctly. For example,

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{fontspec}
\newfontfamily\unicodefont{Lucida Grande}
\usepackage{mathpazo}
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\begin{document}
A legacy \TeX\ font. {\unicodefont A unicode font.}
\end{document}
```

Example 4: Explicit selection of the bold font.

```
| Helvetica Neue UltraLight | Neue UltraLight | Helvetica Neue UltraLight | Helvetica Neue UltraLight | Italic | Neue UltraLight | Helvetica Neue | Helvetica Neue | Neue UltraLight | Helvetica Neue | Neue | Helvetica Neue | Neue UltraLight | Neue | Helvetica Neue | He
```

6.1 More control over font shape selection

```
BoldFont = \langle font \ name \rangle
ItalicFont = \langle font \ name \rangle
BoldItalicFont = \langle font \ name \rangle
SlantedFont = \langle font \ name \rangle
BoldSlantedFont = \langle font \ name \rangle
SmallCapsFont = \langle font \ name \rangle
```

The automatic bold, italic, and bold italic font selections will not be adequate for the needs of every font: while some fonts mayn't even have bold or italic shapes, in which case a skilled (or lucky) designer may be able to chose well-matching accompanying shapes from a different font altogether, others can have a range of bold and italic fonts to chose among. The BoldFont and ItalicFont features are provided for these situations. If only one of these is used, the bold italic font is requested as the default from the *new* font. See Example 4.

If a bold italic shape is not defined, or you want to specify *both* custom bold and italic shapes, the BoldItalicFont feature is provided.

6.1.1 Input shorthands

For those cases that the base font name is repeated, you can replace it with an asterisk. (This has been shown previously in Section 4.2 on page 6.) For example, some space can be saved instead of writing 'Baskerville SemiBold':

6.1.2 Small caps and slanted font shapes

For the rare situations where a font family will have slanted *and* italic shapes, these may be specified separately using the analogous features SlantedFont and BoldSlantedFont. Without these, however, the LaTeX font switches for slanted (\textsl, \slshape) will default to the italic shape.

Old-fashioned font families used to distribute their small caps glyphs in separate fonts due to the limitations on the number of glyphs allowed in the PostScript Type 1 format. Such fonts may be used by declaring the SmallCapsFont of the family you are specifying:

For most modern fonts that have small caps as a font feature, this level of control isn't generally necessary, but you may still occasionally find font families in which the small caps are in a separate font.

All of the bold, italic, and small caps fonts can be loaded with different font features from the main font. See Section 7.4 for details. When an OpenType font is selected for SmallCapsFont, the small caps font feature is *not* automatically enabled. In this case, users should write instead

6.2 Math(s) fonts

When \setmainfont, \setsansfont and \setmonofont are used in the preamble, they also define the fonts to be used in maths mode inside the \mathrm-type commands. This only occurs in the preamble because LATEX freezes the maths fonts after this stage of the processing. The fontspec package must also be loaded after any maths font packages (e.g., euler) to be successful. (Actually, it is only euler that is the problem.\(^1\))

Note that you may find that loading some maths packages won't be as smooth as you expect since fontspec (and X¬TEX in general) breaks many of the assumptions of TEX as to where maths characters and accents can be found. Contact me if you have troubles, but I can't guarantee to be able to fix any incompatibilities. The Lucida and Euler maths fonts should be fine; for all others keep an eye out for problems.

```
\label{eq:continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous_continuous
```

However, the default text fonts may not necessarily be the ones you wish to use when typesetting maths (especially with the use of fancy ligatures and so on). For this reason, you may optionally use the commands above (in the same way as our other \fontspec-like commands) to explicitly state which fonts to use inside such commands as \mathrm. Additionally, the \setboldmathrm command allows

¹Speaking of euler, if you want to use its [mathbf] option, it won't work, and you'll need to put this after fontspec is loaded instead: \AtBeginDocument{\DeclareMathAlphabet\mathbf{U}{eur}{b}{n}

you define the font used for \mathrm when in bold maths mode (which is activated with, among others, \boldmath).

For example, if you were using Optima with the Euler maths font, you might have this in your preamble:

```
\usepackage{mathpazo}
\usepackage{fontspec,xunicode}
\setmainfont{Optima}
\setmathrm{Optima}
\setboldmathrm[BoldFont={Optima ExtraBlack}]{Optima Bold}
```

6.3 Miscellaneous font selecting details

Spaces \fontspec and \addfontfeatures ignore trailing spaces as if it were a 'naked' control sequence; e.g., 'M. \fontspec $\{...\}$ N' and 'M. \fontspec $\{...\}$ N' are the same.

Italic small caps Note that this package redefines the \itshape and \scshape commands in order to allow them to select italic small caps in conjunction.

Emphasis and nested emphasis You may specify the behaviour of the \emph command by setting the \emphasis command. *E.g.*, for bold emphasis:

\renewcommand\emshape{\bfseries}

Nested emphasis is controlled by the $\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{N}}}}$ to produce small caps:

\renewcommand\eminnershape{\scshape}

7 Selecting font features

The commands discussed so far such as \ontspec each take an optional argument for accessing the font features of the requested font. Commands are provided to set default features to be applied for all fonts, and even to change the features that a font is presently loaded with. Different font shapes can be loaded with separate features, and different features can even be selected for different sizes that the font appears in. This section discusses these options.

7.1 Default settings

```
\defaultfontfeatures{\langle font features \rangle}
```

It is desirable to define options that are applied to every subsequent font selection command: a default feature set, so to speak. This may be defined with the \defaultfontfeatures command, shown in Example 5. New calls of \defaultfontfeatures overwrite previous ones.

Example 5: A demonstration of the \defaultfontfeatures command.

```
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}
Some default text 0123456789 \\
\defaultfontfeatures{
   Numbers=OldStyle, Color=888888
}
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Adventor}
Now grey, with old-style figures:
0123456789
```

Some default text 0123456789

Now grey, with old-style gures: 0123456789

Example 6: A demonstration of the \addfontfeatures command.

'In 1842, 999 people sailed 97 miles in 13 boats. In 1923, 111 people sailed 54 miles in 56 boats.'

Year	People	Miles	Boats
1842	999	75	13
1923	111	54	56

7.2 Changing the currently selected features

```
\addfontfeatures(\langle font features \rangle)
```

This command allows font features to be changed without knowing what features are currently selected or even what font is being used. A good example of this could be to add a hook to all tabular material to use monospaced numbers, as shown in Example 6.

\addfontfeature

This command may also be executed under the alias \addfontfeature.

7.3 Priority of feature selection

Features defined with \addfontfeatures override features specified by \fontspec, which in turn override features specified by \defaultfontfeatures. If in doubt, whenever a new font is chosen for the first time, an entry is made in the transcript (.log) file displaying the font name and the features requested.

7.4 Different features for different font shapes

```
BoldFeatures{\langle features \rangle}
ItalicFeatures{\langle features \rangle}
BoldItalicFeatures{\langle features \rangle}
SlantedFeatures{\langle features \rangle}
BoldSlantedFeatures{\langle features \rangle}
SmallCapsFeatures{\langle features \rangle}
```

It is entirely possible that separate fonts in a family will require separate options; *e.g.*, Hoefler Text Italic contains various swash feature options that are completely unavailable in the upright shapes.

The font features defined at the top level of the optional \fontspec argument are applied to <code>all</code> shapes of the family. Using Upright-, SmallCaps-, Bold-, Italic-, and BoldItalicFeatures, separate font features may be defined to their respective shapes <code>in addition</code> to, and with precedence over, the 'global' font features. See Example 7.

Combined with the options for selecting arbitrary *fonts* for the different shapes, these separate feature options allow the selection of arbitrary weights in the Skia typeface, as shown in Example 8.

Note that because most fonts include their small caps glyphs within the main font, features specified with SmallCapsFeatures are applied *in addition* to any other shape-specific features as defined above, and hence SmallCapsFeatures can be nested within ItalicFeatures and friends. Every combination of upright, italic, bold and small caps can thus be assigned individual features, as shown in the somewhat ludicrous Example 9.

Example 9: An example of setting the SmallCapsFeatures separately for each font shape.

```
\fontspec[
                                       UprightFeatures={Color = 220022,
                                            SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=115511}},
                                        ItalicFeatures={Color = 2244FF,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=112299}},
                                           BoldFeatures={Color = FF4422,
                                             SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=992211}},
                                    BoldItalicFeatures={Color = 888844,
                                            SmallCapsFeatures = {Color=444422}},
                                            ]{TeX Gyre Termes}
Upright SMALL CAPS
                                   Upright {\scshape Small Caps}\\
Italic Italic Small Caps
                                   \itshape Italic {\scshape Italic Small Caps}\\
Bold Bold Small Caps
                                    \upshape\bfseries Bold {\scshape Bold Small Caps}\\
Bold Italic Bold Italic Small Caps
                                   \itshape Bold Italic {\scshape Bold Italic Small Caps}
```

Example 10: An example of specifying different font features for different sizes of font with SizeFeatures.

7.5 Different features for different font sizes

```
SizeFeatures = {
...
{ Size = \langle size range \rangle, \langle font features \rangle },
{ Size = \langle size range \rangle, Font = \langle font name \rangle, \langle font features \rangle },
...
}
```

The SizeFeature feature is a little more complicated than the previous features discussed. It allows different fonts and different font features to be selected for a given font family as the point size varies.

It takes a comma separated list of braced, comma separated lists of features for each size range. Each sub-list must contain the Size option to declare the size range, and optionally Font to change the font based on size. Other (regular) fontspec features that are added are used on top of the font features that would be used anyway. A demonstration to hopefully clarify these details is shown in Example 10. A less trivial example is shown in the context of optical font sizes in Section 8.6 on page 19.

To be precise, the Size sub-feature accepts arguments in the form shown in Ta-

Table 1: Syntax for specifying the size to apply custom font features.

Input	Font size, s
Size = X-	$s \geqslant X$
Size = -Y	s < Y
Size = X-Y	$X \leqslant s < Y$
Size = X	s = X

Example 11: Selecting colour with transparency.



\fontsize{48}{48}
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Bonum Bold}
{\addfontfeature{Color=FF000099}W}\kern-1ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=0000FF99}S}\kern-0.8ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=DDBB2299}P}\kern-0.8ex
{\addfontfeature{Color=00BB3399}R}

ble 1. Braces around the size range are optional. For an exact font size (Size=X) font sizes chosen near that size will 'snap'. For example, for size definitions at exactly 11pt and 14pt, if a 12pt font is requested *actually* the 11pt font will be selected. This is a remnant of the past when fonts were designed in metal (at obviously rigid sizes) and later when bitmap fonts were similarly designed for fixed sizes.

If additional features are only required for a single size, the other sizes must still be specified. As in:

```
SizeFeatures={
    {Size=-10,Numbers=Uppercase},
    {Size=10-}}
```

Otherwise, the font sizes greater than 10 won't be defined!

8 Font independent options

Features introduced in this section may be used with any font.

8.1 Colour

Color (or Colour), also shown in Section 7.1 on page 12 and elsewhere, uses font specifications to set the colour of the text. The colour is defined as a triplet of two-digit Hex RGB values, with optionally another value for the transparency (where 00 is completely transparent and FF is opaque.) Transparency is supported by Lual-TeX and by XHL-TeX with the xdv2pdf driver (Mac OS X only); XHL-TeX with the xdv1pdfmx driver does not support this feature.

If you load the xcolor package, you may use any named colour instead of writing the colours in hexadecimal.

Example 12: Automatically calculated scale values.

\setmainfont{Georgia}
\newfontfamily\lc[Scale=MatchLowercase]{Verdana}
The perfect match {\lc is hard to find.}\\
\newfontfamily\uc[Scale=MatchUppercase]{Arial}
L O G O \uc F O N T

The perfect match is hard to find.

```
\usepackage{xcolor}
...
\fontspec[Color=red]{Verdana} ...
\definecolor{Foo}{rgb}{0.3,0.4,0.5}
\fontspec[Color=Foo]{Verdana} ...
```

The color package is *not* supported; use xcolor instead.

You may specify the transparency with a named colour using the Opacity feature:

\fontspec[Color=red,Opacity=0.7]{Verdana} ...

8.2 Scale

```
Scale = \langle number \rangle

Scale = MatchLowercase

Scale = MatchUppercase
```

In its explicit form, Scale takes a single numeric argument for linearly scaling the font, as demonstrated in Section 5 on page 8. It is now possible to measure the correct dimensions of the fonts loaded and calculate values to scale them automatically.

As well as a numerical argument, Scale feature also accepts options MatchLowercase and MatchUppercase, which will scale the font being selected to match the current default roman font to either the height of the lowercase or uppercase letters, respectively; these features are shown in Example 12.

The amount of scaling used in each instance is reported in the .log file. Since there is some subjectivity about the exact scaling to be used, these values should be used to fine-tune the results.

8.3 Interword space

While the space between words can be varied on an individual basis with the TEX primitive \spaceskip command, it is more convenient to specify this information when the font is first defined.

The space in between words in a paragraph will be chosen automatically, and generally will not need to be adjusted. For those times when the precise details are important, the WordSpace feature is provided, which takes either a single scaling factor to scale the default value, or a triplet of comma-separated values to scale the

Example 13: Scaling the default interword space. An exaggerated value has been chosen to emphasise the effects here.

Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space.

Some text for our example to take up some space, and to demonstrate the default interword space.

\fontspec{TeX Gyre Termes}
Some text for our example to take
up some space, and to demonstrate
the default interword space.
\bigskip

\addfontfeature{ WordSpace = 0.3 }
Some text for our example to take
up some space, and to demonstrate
the default interword space.

Example 14: Scaling the default post-punctuation space.

\nonfrenchspacing
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola}
Letters, Words. Sentences.
\nonfrenchspacing
\fontspec{TeX Gyre Schola}
Letters, Words. Sentences.
\par
\fontspec[PunctuationSpace=0]{TeX Gyre Schola}
Letters, Words. Sentences.

nominal value, the stretch, and the shrink of the interword space by, respectively. (WordSpace= $\{x\}$ is the same as WordSpace= $\{x,x,x\}$.)

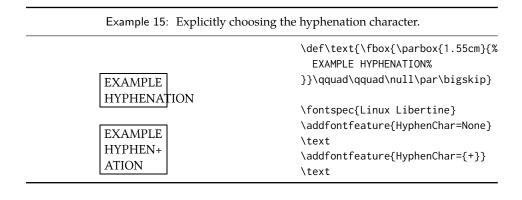
8.4 Post-punctuation space

If \frenchspacing is not in effect, TEX will allow extra space after some punctuation in its goal of justifying the lines of text. Generally, this is considered old-fashioned, but occasionally in small amounts the effect can be justified, pardon the pun.

The PunctuationSpace feature takes a scaling factor by which to adjust the nominal value chosen for the font; this is demonstrated in Example 14. Note that PunctuationSpace=0 is *not* equivalent to \frenchspacing, although the difference will only be apparent when a line of text is under-full.

8.5 The hyphenation character

The letter used for hyphenation may be chosen with the HyphenChar feature. It takes three types of input, which are chosen according to some simple rules. If the input is the string None, then hyphenation is suppressed for this font. If the input is a single character, then this character is used. Finally, if the input is longer than a single character it must be the UTF-8 slot number of the hyphen character you desire.



Example 16: A demonstration of automatic optical size selection.

	\fontspec{Latin Modern Roman} Automatic optical size	
Automatic optical size Automatic optical size	\scalebox{0.4}{\Huge Automatic optical size}	***

This package redefines \LaTeX 's $\char-$ macro such that it adjusts along with the above changes.

8.6 Optical font sizes

Optically scaled fonts thicken out as the font size decreases in order to make the glyph shapes more robust (less prone to losing detail), which improves legibility. Conversely, at large optical sizes the serifs and other small details may be more delicately rendered.

OpenType fonts with optical scaling will exist in several discrete sizes, and these will be selected by X_TT_EX *automatically* determined by the current font size as in Example 16, in which we've scaled down some large text in order to be able to compare the difference for equivalent font sizes.

The OpticalSize option may be used to specify a different optical size. With OpticalSize set to zero, no optical size font substitution is performed, as shown in Example 17.

The SizeFeatures feature (Section 7.5 on page 15) can be used to specify exactly which optical sizes will be used for ranges of font size. For example, something like:

Example 17: Optical size substitution is suppressed when set to zero.

Latin Modern optical sizes Latin Modern optical sizes Latin Modern optical sizes Latin Modern optical sizes

```
\fontspec[OpticalSize=0]{Latin Modern Roman 5 Regular}
Latin Modern optical sizes \\
\fontspec[OpticalSize=0]{Latin Modern Roman 8 Regular}
Latin Modern optical sizes \\
\fontspec[OpticalSize=0]{Latin Modern Roman 12 Regular}
Latin Modern optical sizes \\
\fontspec[OpticalSize=0]{Latin Modern Roman 17 Regular}
Latin Modern optical sizes
```

Part II OpenType

9 Introduction

OpenType fonts (and other 'smart' font technologies such as AAT and Graphite) can change the appearance of text in many different ways. These changes are referred to as features. When the user applies a feature — for example, small capitals — to a run of text, the code inside the font makes appropriate adjustments and small capitals appear in place of lowercase letters. However, the use of such features does not affect the underlying text. In our small caps example, the lowercase letters are still stored in the document; only the appearance has been changed by the OpenType feature. This makes it possible to search and copy text without difficulty. If the user selected a different font that does not support small caps, the 'plain' lowercase letters would appear instead.

Some OpenType features are required to support particular scripts, and these features are often applied automatically. The scripts used in India, for example, often require that characters be reshaped and reordered after they are typed by the user, in order to display them in the traditional ways that readers expect. Other features can be applied to support a particular language. The Junicode font for medievalists uses by default the Old English shape of the letter thorn, while in modern Icelandic thorn has a more rounded shape. If a user tags some text as being in Icelandic, Junicode will automatically change to the Icelandic shape through an OpenType feature that localizes the shapes of letters.

A very large group of OpenType features is designed to support high quality typography in Latin, Greek, Cyrillic and other standard scripts. Examples of some font features have already been shown in previous sections; the complete set of OpenType font features supported by fontspec is described below in Section 10.

The OpenType specification provides four-letter codes (e.g., smcp for small capitals) for each feature. The four-letter codes are given below along with the fontspec names for various features, for the benefit of people who are already familiar with OpenType. You can ignore the codes if they don't mean anything to you.

Table 2: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Ligatures'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Ligatures =	Required NoRequired Common NoCommon	* rlig rlig (deactivate) * liga liga (deactivate) * clig clig (deactivate)
	Rare/Discretionary Historic TeX	dlig hlig tlig/trep

^{*} This feature is activated by default.

9.1 How to select font features

Font features are selected by a series of $\langle feature \rangle = \langle option \rangle$ selections. Features are (usually) grouped logically; for example, all font features relating to ligatures are accessed by writing Ligatures={...} with the appropriate argument(s), which could be TeX, Rare, etc., as shown below in Section 10.1.

Multiple options may be given to any feature that accepts non-numerical input, although doing so will not always work. Some options will override others in generally obvious ways; Numbers={OldStyle,Lining} doesn't make much sense because the two options are mutually exclusive, and XqTeX will simply use the last option that is specified (in this case using Lining over OldStyle).

If a feature or an option is requested that the font does not have, a warning is given in the console output. As mentioned in Section 3.3 on page 5 these warnings can be suppressed by selecting the [quiet] package option.

10 Complete listing of OpenType font features

10.1 Ligatures

Ligatures refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or æsthetic reasons. The list of options, of which multiple may be selected at one time, is shown in Table 2. A demonstration with the Linux Libertine fonts² is shown in Example 18.

Note the additional features accessed with Ligatures=TeX. These are not actually real OpenType features, but additions provided by luaotfload (i.e., LuaTeX only) to emulate TeX's behaviour for ASCII input of curly quotes and punctuation. In XeTeX this is achieved with the Mapping feature (see Section 12.1 on page 37) but for consistency Ligatures=TeX will perform the same function as Mapping=tex-text.

²http://www.linuxlibertine.org/

$strict \rightarrow strict$ $wurtzite \rightarrow wurtzite$ $firefly \rightarrow firefly$

\def\test#1#2{%
 #2 \$\to\$ {\addfontfeature{#1} #2}\\}
\fontspec{Linux Libertine}
\test{Ligatures=Historic}{strict}
\test{Ligatures=Rare}{wurtzite}
\test{Ligatures=NoCommon}{firefly}

Table 3: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Letters'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Letters =	Uppercase SmallCaps	case
	PetiteCaps	рсар
	UppercaseSmallCaps UppercasePetiteCaps	c2pc
	Unicase	unic

10.2 Letters

The Letters feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. Open-Type fonts may contain the following options: Uppercase, SmallCaps, PetiteCaps, UppercaseSmallCaps, UppercasePetiteCaps, and Unicase.

Petite caps are smaller than small caps. SmallCaps and PetiteCaps turn lower-case letters into the smaller caps letters, whereas the Uppercase... options turn the capital letters into the smaller caps (good, e.g., for applying to already uppercase acronyms like 'NASA'). This difference is shown in Example 19. 'Unicase' is a weird hybrid of upper and lower case letters.

Note that the Uppercase option will (probably) not actually map letters to uppercase.³ It is designed select various uppercase forms for glyphs such as accents and dashes, such as shown in Example 20; note the raised position of the hyphen to better match the surrounding letters.

 $^{^3 \}text{If you want automatic uppercase letters, look to LATeX's $$\action{Algorithm} MakeUppercase command.$

Example 20: An example of the Uppercase option of the Letters feature.			
UPPER-CASE example UPPER-CASE example	\fontspec{Linux Libertine} UPPER-CASE example \\ \addfontfeature{Letters=Uppercase} UPPER-CASE example		

Table 4: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Numbers'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Numbers =	Uppercase/Lining Lowercase/OldStyle Proportional Monospaced SlashedZero Arabic	lnum onum pnum tnum zero anum

The Kerning feature also contains an Uppercase option, which adds a small amount of spacing in between letters (see Section 10.12 on page 29).

10.3 Numbers

The Numbers feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font, accepting options shown in Table 4.

The synonyms Uppercase and Lowercase are equivalent to Lining and OldStyle, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in Section 7.2 on page 13. The Monospaced option is useful for tabular material when digits need to be vertically aligned.

The SlashedZero option replaces the default zero with a slashed version to prevent confusion with an uppercase 'O', shown in Example 21.

The Arabic option (with tag anum) maps regular numerals to their Arabic script or Persian equivalents based on the current Language setting (see Section 10.18 on page 33), shown in Example 22 using the Zar fonts⁴. This option is based on a LuaTeX feature of the luaotfload package, not an OpenType feature. (Thus, this feature is unavailable in XaTeX.)

⁴http://wiki.irmug.org/index.php/X_Series_2

Example 21: The effect of the SlashedZero option.		
	\fontspec[Numbers=Lining]{TeX Gyre Bonum} 0123456789	
0123456789 0123456789	\fontspec[Numbers=SlashedZero]{TeX Gyre Bonum} 0123456789	

Example 22: An example of number remapping to Arabic or Persian. (LuaTeX only.)

177607789177607789

\fontspec[Script=Arabic,Numbers=Arabic]{XB Zar}
{\addfontfeature{Language=Arabic}
0123456789} \\
{\addfontfeature{Language=Parsi}
0123456789}

Table 5: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Contextuals'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Contextuals =	Swash	cswh
	Alternate	calt
	WordInitial	init
	WordFinal	fina
	LineFinal	falt
	Inner	medi

10.4 Contextuals

This feature refers to substitutions of glyphs that vary 'contextually' by their relative position in a word or string of characters; features such as contextual swashes are accessed here.

Historic forms are accessed in OpenType fonts via the feature Style=Historic; this is generally *not* contextual in OpenType, which is why it is not included here.

10.5 Vertical Position

The VerticalPosition feature is used to access things like subscript (Inferior) and superscript (Superior) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, sometimes). The Ordinal option will only raise characters that are used in some languages directly after a number. The ScientificInferior feature will move glyphs further below the baseline than the Inferior feature. These are shown in Example 24

Numerator and Denominator should only be used for creating arbitrary fractions (see next section).

The realscripts package (which is also loaded xltxtra for $X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{2}}X$) redefines the \textsubscript and \textsuperscript commands to use the above font features

Example 23: An example of the Swashes option of the Contextuals feature.

Without Contextual Swashes With Contextual Swashes; cf. W C S \fontspec{Warnock Pro} \itshape
Without Contextual Swashes
\fontspec[Contextuals=Swash]{Warnock Pro}
With Contextual Swashes; cf. W C S

Table 6: Options for the OpenType font feature 'VerticalPosition'.

Feature	Option	Tag
VerticalPosition =	Superior Inferior	sups subs
	Numerator Denominator ScientificInferior Ordinal	numr dnom

Example 24: The VerticalPosition feature. Note that the Ordinal option can be quite unreliable, as the results here demonstrate.

	\fontspec[VerticalPosition=Superior]{Warnock Pro} Sup: abdehilmnorst (-\\$12,345.67)	\\
	\fontspec[VerticalPosition=Numerator]{Warnock Pro}	```
	Numerator: 12345	\\
(\$10.245.67)	\fontspec[VerticalPosition=Denominator]{Warnock Pro}	
Sup: abdehilmnorst (-\$12,345.67)	Denominator: 12345	\\
Numerator: 12345	\fontspec[VerticalPosition=ScientificInferior]{Warnock	Pro}
Denominator: 12345	Scientific Inferior: 12345	\\
Scientific Inferior: 12345	\fontspec[VerticalPosition=Ordinal]{Warnock Pro}	
'Ordinals': 1st 2nd 3rd 4th 0th	'Ordinals': 1st 2nd 3rd 4th 0th	

Table 7: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Fractions'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Fractions =	On	frac
	Alternate	afrc

Example 25: The Fractions feature.

automatically, including for use in footnote labels.

10.6 Fractions

For OpenType fonts use a regular text slash to create fractions, but the Fraction feature must be explicitly activated. Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the Alternate feature. These are both shown in Example 25.

10.7 Stylistic Set variations

This feature selects a 'Stylistic Set' variation, which usually corresponds to an alternate glyph style for a range of characters (usually an alphabet or subset thereof). This feature is specified numerically. These correspond to OpenType features ss01, ss02, etc.

Two demonstrations from the Junicode font⁵ are shown in Example 26 and Example 27; thanks to Adam Buchbinder for the suggestion.

(This is a synonym of the Variant feature for AAT fonts.) See Section 15 on page 44 for a way to assign names to stylistic sets, which should be done on a per-font basis.

5http://junicode.sf.net

Example 26: Insular letterforms, as used in medieval Northern Europe, for the Junicode font accessed with the StylisticSet feature.

\fontspec{Junicode}
Insular forms. Insular forms. \\
Injulap popmp. \addfontfeature{StylisticSet=2}
Insular forms. \\

Example 27: Enlarged minuscules (capital letters remain unchanged) for the Junicode font, accessed with the StylisticSet feature.

ENLARGED Minuscules. ENLARGED Minuscules.	\fontspec{Junicode} ENLARGED Minuscules. \\ \addfontfeature{StylisticSet=6} ENLARGED Minuscules. \\
--	---

Example 28:	The Alternate	feature.
-------------	---------------	----------

а & h	\fontspec{Linux Libertine}
А&h	<pre>\textsc{a} \& h \\ \addfontfeature{Alternate=0} \textsc{a} \& h</pre>

10.8 Character Variants

Similar to the 'Stylistic Sets' above, 'Character Variations' are selected numerically to adjust the output of (usually) a single character for the particular font. These correspond to the OpenType features cv01 to cv99.

I don't have a font to demonstrate this with (please suggest one if you know of a free font with this feature!), but the syntax is similar to that above:

10.9 Alternates

The Alternate feature (for the raw OpenType feature salt) is used to access alternate font glyphs when variations exist in the font, such as in Example 28. It uses a numerical selection, starting from zero, that will be different for each font. Note that the Style=Alternate option is equivalent to Alternate=0 to access the default case.

See Section 15 on page 44 for a way to assign names to alternates, which must be done on a per-font basis.

10.10 Style

'Ruby' refers to a small optical size, used in Japanese typography for annotations. For fonts with multiple salt OpenType features, use the fontspec Alternate feature instead.

Example 29 and Example 30 both contain glyph substitutions with similar characteristics. Note the occasional inconsistency with which font features are labelled; a long-tailed 'Q' could turn up anywhere!

In other features, larger breadths of changes can be seen, covering the style of an entire alphabet. See Example 31 and Example 32; in the latter, the Italic option affects the Latin text and the Ruby option the Japanese.

Table 8: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Style'.

Feature	Option	Tag
Style =	Alternate	salt
	Italic	ital
	Ruby	ruby
	Swash	swsh
	Historic	hist
	TitlingCaps	titl
	Horizontal Kana	hkna
	VerticalKana	vkna

K Q R k v w y K Q R k v w y	\fontspec{Warnock Pro} K Q R k v w y \addfontfeature{Style=Alternate} K Q R k v w y	\\
Example 30: Example of the	ne Historic option of the Style feature.	_
<u> </u>	\fontspec{Adobe Jenson Pro}	
Example 30: Example of th MQZ	•	
<u> </u>	\fontspec{Adobe Jenson Pro}	\\ ric}

Example 31: Example of the Tit	lingCaps option of the Style feature.	
TITLING CAPS TITLING CAPS	\fontspec{Adobe Garamond Pro} TITLING CAPS \addfontfeature{Style=TitlingCaps} TITLING CAPS	\\

Example 32: Example of the Italic and Ruby options of the Style feature.

Latin ようこそ ワカヨタレソ *Latin* ようこそ ワカヨタレソ

\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}
Latin \kana \\
\addfontfeature{Style={Italic, Ruby}}
Latin \kana

Example 33: Example of the Horizontal Kana and Vertical Kana options of the Style feature.

\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}\
\kana \\
\chiontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro}\
\kana \\
\langle \

Table 9: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Diacritics'.

Feature	Option	Tag	
Diacritics =	= MarkToBase	* mark	
	NoMarkToBase	mark	(deactivate)
	MarkToMark	$* \ mkmk$	
	NoMarkToMark	mkmk	(deactivate)
	AboveBase	* abvm	
	NoAboveBase	abvm	(deactivate)
	BelowBase	* blwm	
	NoBelowBase	blwm	(deactivate)

^{*} This feature is activated by default.

Note the difference here between the default and the horizontal style kana in Example 33: the horizontal style is slightly wider.

10.11 Diacritics

Specifies how combining diacritics should be placed. These will usually be controlled automatically according to the Script setting.

10.12 Kerning

Specifies how inter-glyph spacing should behave.

As briefly mentioned previously at the end of Section 10.2 on page 22, the Uppercase option will add a small amount of tracking between uppercase letters,

Table 10: Options for the OpenType font feature 'Kerning'.

Feature	Option		Tag	
Kerning =	Uppercase On Off	*	kern	(deactivate)

^{*} This feature is activated by default.

Example 34: Adding extra kerning for uppercase letters. (The difference is usually very small.)

UPPERCASE EXAMPLE UPPERCASE EXAMPLE

\fontspec{Romande ADF Std Bold}
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE \\
\addfontfeature{Kerning=Uppercase}
UPPERCASE EXAMPLE

	Example 35: Articifial font transformations.		
		\fontspec{Charis SIL} \emph{ABCxyz} \fontspec[FakeSlant=0.2]{Charis SIL} ABCxyz	
ABCxyz	ABCxyz	\fontspec{Charis SIL} ABCxyz \fontspec[FakeStretch=1.2]{Charis SIL} ABCxyz	
ABCxyz ABCxyz	ABCxyz ABCxyz	\fontspec{Charis SIL} \textbf{ABCxyz} \fontspec[FakeBold=1.5]{Charis SIL} ABCxyz	

seen in Example 34, which uses the Romande fonts⁶ (thanks to Clea F. Rees for the suggestion).

10.13 Font transformations

In rare situations users may want to mechanically distort the shapes of the glyphs in the current font such as shown in Example 35. Please don't overuse these features; they are *not* a good alternative to having the real shapes.

If values are omitted, their defaults are as shown above.

If you want the bold shape to be faked automatically, or the italic shape to be slanted automatically, use the AutoFakeBold and AutoFakeSlant features. For example, the following two invocations are equivalent:

```
\fontspec[AutoFakeBold=1.5]{Charis SIL}
\fontspec[BoldFeatures={FakeBold=1.5}]{Charis SIL}
```

If both of the AutoFake... features are used, then the bold italic font will also be faked.

Currently, FakeStretch doesn't work in Lua $T_E\!X$ and will be ignored silently.

10.14 Annotation

Some fonts are equipped with an extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed with the Annotation feature (OpenType feature nalt), selected numerically as shown in Example 36.

⁶http://arkandis.tuxfamily.org/adffonts.html

Example 36: Annotation forms for OpenType fonts.

```
123456789
(1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9)
(1 (2 (3 (4 (5 (6 (7 (8 (9
1) 2) 3) 4) 5) 6) 7) 8) 9)
1) 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
0 2 8 4 6 6 7 8 9
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
                            \fontspec{Hiragino Maru Gothic Pro}
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
                             1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
                            \def\x#1{\\{\addfontfeature{Annotation=#1}
023456789
                                     1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 }}
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9.
                            x0\x1\x2\x3\x4\x5\x6\x7\x7\x8\x9
```

Table 11: Options for the OpenType font feature 'CJKShape'.

Feature	Option	Tag
CJKShape =	Traditional	trad
-	Simplified	smpl
	JIS1978	jp78
	JIS1983	jp83
	JIS1990	jp90
	Expert	expt
	NLC	nlck

10.15 CJK shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are 'supposed' to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs available in order to be able to display these gylphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both AAT and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options: Traditional, Simplified, JIS1978, JIS1983, JIS1990, and Expert. OpenType also supports the NLC option.

10.16 Character width

Many Asian fonts are equipped with variously spaced characters for shoehorning into their generally monospaced text. These are accessed through the CharacterWidth feature.

Japanese alphabetic glyphs (in Hiragana or Katakana) may be typeset proportionally, to better fit horizontal measures, or monospaced, to fit into the rigid grid imposed by ideographic typesetting. In this latter case, there are also half-width forms for squeezing more kana glyphs (which are less complex than the kanji they are amongst) into a given block of space. The same features are given to roman letters in Japanese fonts, for typesetting foreign words in the same style as the surrounding text.

Example 37: Different standards for CJK ideograph presentation.			
唖噛躯 妍并訝 唖噛躯 妍并訝 啞嚙軀 妍并訝	<pre>\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro} {\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Traditional} \text } \\ {\addfontfeature{CJKShape=NLC} \text } \\ {\addfontfeature{CJKShape=Expert} \text }</pre>		

 $Table\ 12: Options\ for\ the\ Open Type\ font\ feature\ 'Character Width'.$

Feature	Option	Tag
CharacterWidth =	Proportional	pwid
	Full	fwid
	Half	hwid
	Third	twid
	Quarter	qwid
	AlternateProportional	palt
	AlternateHalf	halt

		Example 38: Proportional or fixed width forms.			
ようこそ	ワカヨタレソ	abcdef	<pre>\def\test{\makebox[2cm][1]{\texta}%</pre>		
ようこそ	ワカヨタレソ	a b c d e f			
ようこそ	ワカヨタレソ	abcdef			

The same situation occurs with numbers, which are provided in increasingly illegible compressed forms seen in Example 39.

10.17 Vertical typesetting

TODO!

10.18 OpenType scripts and languages

Fonts that include glyphs for various scripts and languages may contain different font features for the different character sets and languages they support, and different font features may behave differently depending on the script or language chosen. When multilingual fonts are used, it is important to select which language they are being used for, and more importantly what script is being used.

The 'script' refers to the alphabet in used; for example, both English and French use the Latin script. Similarly, the Arabic script can be used to write in both the Arabic and Persian languages.

The Script and Language features are used to designate this information. The possible options are tabulated in Table 13 on page 35 and Table 14 on page 36, respectively. When a script or language is requested that is not supported by the current font, a warning is printed in the console output.

Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font, they are automatically selected by fontspec before all others and, if $X_{\overline{1}}I_{\overline{1}}X_{\overline{2}}$ is being used, will specifically select the ICU renderer for this font, as described in Section 12.3 on page 38.

10.18.1 Script and Language examples

In the following examples, the Code2000 font⁷ is used to typeset the input with and without the OpenType Script applied. The text is only rendered correctly in the second case; many examples of incorrect diacritic spacing as well as a lack of contextual ligatures and rearrangement can be seen. Thanks to Jonathan Kew, Yves Codet and Gildas Hamel for their contributions towards these examples.

⁷http://www.code2000.net/

Example 40: An example of various Scripts and Languages.

\testfeature{Script=Arabic}{\arabictext} મર્યાદા-સૂયક નવિદન મર્યાદા-સૂયક નિવેદન \testfeature{Script=Devanagari}{\devanagaritext} \testfeature{Script=Bengali}{\bengalitext} നമ്മുടെ പാരബര്യ നമ്മുടെ പാരബര്യ \testfeature{Script=Gujarati}{\gujaratitext} ਆਦ ਸਿਚੂ ਜੁਗਾਦ ਸਿਚੂ ਆਦਿ ਸਚੂ ਜੁਗਾਦਿ ਸਚੂ \testfeature{Script=Malayalam}{\malayalamtext} \testfeature{Script=Gurmukhi}{\gurmukhitext} தமிழ் தடேி தமிழ் தேடி \testfeature{Script=Tamil}{\tamiltext} רְדָתַה רְדָתַה \testfeature{Script=Hebrew}{\hebrewtext} \def\examplefont{Doulos SIL} cấp số mỗi cấp số mỗi \testfeature{Language=Vietnamese}{\vietnamesetext}

10.18.2 Defining new scripts and languages

\newfontscript
\newfontlanguage

While the scripts and languages listed in Table 13 and Table 14 are intended to be comprehensive, there may be some missing; alternatively, you might wish to use different names to access scripts/languages that are already listed. Adding scripts and languages can be performed with the \newfontscript and \newfontlanguage commands. For example,

```
\newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
\newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}
```

The first argument is the fontspec name, the second the OpenType tag. The advantage to using these commands rather than \newfontfeature (see Section 15 on page 44) is the error-checking that is performed when the script or language is requested.

Part III

LuaTFX-only font features

11 OpenType font feature files

An OpenType font feature file is a plain text file describing OpenType layout feature of a font in a human-readable format. The syntax of OpenType feature files is defined by Adobe⁸.

Feature files can be used to add or customize OpenType features of a font on the fly without editing the font file itself.

 $^{^{8} \}verb|http://www.adobe.com/devnet/opentype/afdko/topic_feature_file_syntax.html|$

Adding a new OpenType feature is as creating a plain text file defining the new feature and then loading it by passing its name or path to FeatureFile, then OpenType features defined in the file can be activated as usual.

For example, when adding one of the default features like kern or liga, no special activation is needed. On the other hand, an optional feature like onum or smcp will be activated when old style numbers or small capitals are activated, respectively. However, OpenType feature in the feature file can have any and that can be used to selectively activate the feature; for example defining a ligature feature called mlig and then activating it using RawFeature option without activating other ligatures in the font.

Figure 1 shows an example feature file. The first two lines set the script and language under which the defined features will be available, which the default language in both default and Latin scripts, respectively.

Then it defines a liga feature, which is a glyph substitution feature. The names starting with backslash are glyph names that is to be substituted and while the leading backslash is optional, it is used to escape glyph names when they interfere with preserved keywords. It should also be noted that glyph names are font specific and the same glyph can be named differently in different fonts.

Glyph positioning features like kerning can be defined in a similar way, but instead of the keyword sub(stitute) the keyword pos(ition) is used instead. Figure 1 shows an example of adding kerning between AY and ay⁹.

Lines starting with # are comments and will be ignored.

An OpenType feature file can have any number of features and can have a mix of substitution and positioning features, please refer to the full feature file specification for further documentation.

Table 13: Defined Scripts for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrows (\P) .

Arabic	Ethiopic	Limbu	Sumero-Akkadian
Armenian	Georgian	Linear B	Cuneiform
Balinese	Glagolitic	Malayalam	Syloti Nagri
Bengali	Gothic	¶Math	Syriac
Bopomofo	Greek	¶Maths	Tagalog
Braille	Gujarati	Mongolian	Tagbanwa
Buginese	Gurmukhi	Musical Symbols	Tai Le
Buhid	Hangul Jamo	Myanmar	Tai Lu
Byzantine Music	Hangul	N'ko	Tamil
Canadian Syllabics	Hanunoo	Ogham	Telugu
Cherokee	Hebrew	Old Italic	Thaana
¶CJK	¶Hiragana and Katakana	Old Persian Cuneiform	Thai
¶CJK Ideographic	¶Kana	Oriya	Tibetan
Coptic	Javanese	Osmanya	Tifinagh
Cypriot Syllabary	Kannada	Phags-pa	Ugaritic Cuneiform
Cyrillic	Kharosthi	Phoenician	Yi
Default	Khmer	Runic	
Deseret	Lao	Shavian	
Devanagari	Latin	Sinhala	

⁹ The kerning is expressed in font design units which are fractions of em depending on the *units per em* value of the font, usually 1000 for PostScript fonts and 2048 for TrueType fonts.

Table 14: Defined Languages for OpenType fonts. Aliased names are shown in adjacent positions marked with red pilcrows (\P).

Abaza	Default	Igbo	Koryak	Norway House Cree	Serer
Abkhazian	Dogri	ljo	Ladin	Nisi	South Slavey
Adyghe	Divehi	Ilokano	Lahuli	Niuean	Southern Sami
Afrikaans	Djerma	Indonesian	Lak	Nkole	Suri
Afar	Dangme	Ingush	Lambani	N'ko	Svan
Agaw	Dinka	Inuktitut	Lao	Dutch	Swedish
Altai	Dungan	Irish	Latin	Nogai	Swadaya Aramaic
Amharic	Dzongkha	Irish Traditional	Laz	Norwegian	Swahili
Arabic	Ebira	Icelandic	L-Cree	Northern Sami	Swazi
Aari	Eastern Cree	Inari Sami	Ladakhi	Northern Tai	Sutu
Arakanese	Edo	Italian	Lezgi	Esperanto	Syriac
Assamese	Efik	Hebrew	Lingala	Nynorsk	Tabasaran
Athapaskan	Greek	Javanese	Low Mari	Oji-Cree	Tajiki
Avar	English	Yiddish	Limbu	Ojibway	Tamil
Awadhi	Erzya	Japanese	Lomwe	Oriya	Tatar
Aymara	Spanish	Judezmo	Lower Sorbian	Oromo	TH-Cree
Azeri	Estonian	Jula	Lule Sami	Ossetian	Telugu
Badaga	Basque	Kabardian	Lithuanian	Palestinian Aramaic	Tongan
Baghelkhandi	Evenki	Kachchi	Luba	Pali	Tigre
Balkar	Even	Kalenjin	Luganda	Punjabi	Tigrinya
Baule	Ewe	Kannada	Luhya	Palpa	Thai
Berber	French Antillean	Karachay	Luo	Pashto	Tahitian
Bench	¶Farsi	Georgian	Latvian	Polytonic Greek	Tibetan
Bible Cree	¶Parsi	Kazakh	Majang	Pilipino	Turkmen
Belarussian	¶Persian	Kebena	Makua	Palaung	Temne
Bemba	Finnish	Khutsuri Georgian	Malayalam	Polish	Tswana
Bengali	Fijian	Khakass	Traditional	Provencal	Tundra Nenets
Bulgarian	Flemish	Khanty-Kazim	Mansi	Portuguese	Tonga
Bhili	Forest Nenets	Khmer	Marathi	Chin	Todo
	Fon	Khanty-Shurishkar	Marwari	Rajasthani	Turkish
Bhojpuri Bikol	Faroese	•	Mbundu	Rajastnani R-Cree	
Bilen	French	Khanty-Vakhi Khowar	Manchu	R-Cree Russian Buriat	Tsonga Turoyo Aramaic
Blackfoot	Frisian		Moose Cree		Turoyo Aramaic Tulu
		Kikuyu		Riang	
Balochi	Friulian	Kirghiz	Mende	Rhaeto-Romanic	Tuvin Twi
Balante	Futa	Kisii Kaluri	Me'en	Romanian	
Balti	Fulani C-	Kokni	Mizo	Romany	Udmurt
Bambara	Ga .:	Kalmyk	Macedonian	Rusyn	Ukrainian
Bamileke	Gaelic	Kamba	Male	Ruanda	Urdu
Breton	Gagauz	Kumaoni	Malagasy	Russian	Upper Sorbian
Brahui	Galician	Komo	Malinke	Sadri	Uyghur
Braj Bhasha	Garshuni	Komso	Malayalam	Sanskrit	Uzbek
Burmese	Garhwali	Kanuri	Reformed	Santali	Venda
Bashkir	Ge'ez	Kodagu	Malay	Sayisi	Vietnamese
Beti	Gilyak	Korean Old Hangul	Mandinka	Sekota	Wa
Catalan	Gumuz	Konkani	Mongolian	Selkup	Wagdi
Cebuano	Gondi	Kikongo	Manipuri	Sango	West-Cree
Chechen	Greenlandic	Komi-Permyak	Maninka	Shan	Welsh
Chaha Gurage	Garo	Korean	Manx Gaelic	Sibe	Wolof
Chattisgarhi	Guarani	Komi-Zyrian	Moksha	Sidamo	Tai Lue
Chichewa	Gujarati	Kpelle	Moldavian	Silte Gurage	Xhosa
Chukchi	Haitian	Krio	Mon	Skolt Sami	Yakut
Chipewyan	Halam	Karakalpak	Moroccan	Slovak	Yoruba
Cherokee	Harauti	Karelian	Maori	Slavey	Y-Cree
Chuvash	Hausa	Karaim	Maithili	Slovenian	Yi Classic
Comorian	Hawaiin	Karen	Maltese	Somali	Yi Modern
Coptic	Hammer-Banna	Koorete	Mundari	Samoan	Chinese Hong Kong
Cree	Hiligaynon	Kashmiri	Naga-Assamese	Sena	Chinese Phonetic
Carrier	Hindi	Khasi	Nanai	Sindhi	Chinese Simplified
Crimean Tatar	High Mari	Kildin Sami	Naskapi	Sinhalese	Chinese Traditional
Church Slavonic	Hindko	Kui	N-Cree	Soninke	Zande
Czech	Но	Kulvi	Ndebele	Sodo Gurage	Zulu
Danish	Harari	Kumyk	Ndonga	Sotho	
Dargwa	Croatian	Kurdish	Nepali	Albanian	
Woods Cree	Hungarian	Kurukh	Newari	Serbian	
German	Armenian	Kuy	Nagari	Saraiki	
		•	-		

36

Figure 1: An example font feature file.

```
languagesystem DFLT dflt;
languagesystem latn dflt;

# Ligatures
feature liga {
    sub \f \i by \fi;
    sub \f \l by \f1;
} liga;

# Kerning
feature kern {
    pos \A \Y -200;
    pos \a \y -80;
} kern;
```

Example 41: $X_{\overline{H}}T_{\overline{E}}X's$ Mapping feature.

```
"¡A small amount of—text!" \fontspec[Mapping=tex-text]{Cochin}
''!'A small amount of---text!''
```

Part IV

Fonts and features with X_TT_EX

12 X_TT_EX-only font features

The features described here are available for any font selected by fontspec.

12.1 Mapping

Mapping enables a X_HT_EX text-mapping scheme, shown in Example 41.

Using the tex-text mapping is also equivalent to writing Ligatures=TeX. The use of the latter syntax is recommended for better compatibility with LuaTeX documents.

12.2 Letter spacing

Letter spacing, or tracking, is the term given to adding (or subtracting) a small amount of horizontal space in between adjacent characters. It is specified with the LetterSpace, which takes a numeric argument, shown in Example 42.

The letter spacing parameter is a normalised additive factor (not a scaling factor); it is defined as a percentage of the font size. That is, for a 10 pt font, a letter spacing parameter of '1.0' will add 0.1 pt between each letter.

Example 42: The LetterSpace feature.

\fontspec{Didot}
\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=0.0}
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT \\
\addfontfeature{LetterSpace=2.0}
USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT

USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT USE TRACKING FOR DISPLAY CAPS TEXT

This functionality *should not be used for lowercase text*, which is spacing correctly to begin with, but it can be very useful, in small amounts, when setting small caps or all caps titles. Also see the OpenType Uppercase option of the Letters feature (Section 10.2 on page 22).

12.3 Different font technologies: AAT and ICU

X_HT_EX supports two rendering technologies for typesetting, selected with the Renderer font feature. The first, AAT, is that provided (only) by Mac OS X itself. The second, ICU, is an open source OpenType interpreter. It provides much greater support for OpenType features, notably contextual arrangement, over AAT.

In general, this feature will not need to be explicitly called: for OpenType fonts, the ICU renderer is used automatically, and for AAT fonts, AAT is chosen by default. Some fonts, however, will contain font tables for *both* rendering technologies, such as the Hiragino Japanese fonts distributed with Mac OS X, and in these cases the choice may be required.

Among some other font features only available through a specific renderer, ICU provides for the Script and Language features, which allow different font behaviour for different alphabets and languages; see Section 10.18 on page 33 for the description of these features. Because these font features can change which features are able to be selected for the font instance, they are selected by fontspec before all others and will automatically and without warning select the ICU renderer.

12.4 Optical font sizes

Multiple Master fonts are parameterised over orthogonal font axes, allowing continuous selection along such features as weight, width, and optical size (see Section 14 on page 43 for further details). Whereas an OpenType font will have only a few separate optical sizes, a Multiple Master font's optical size can be specified over a continuous range. Unfortunately, this flexibility makes it harder to create an automatic interface through LaTeX, and the optical size for a Multiple Master font must always be specified explicitly.

```
\fontspec[OpticalSize=11]{Minion MM Roman}
MM optical size test \\
\fontspec[OpticalSize=47]{Minion MM Roman}
MM optical size test \\
```

```
\fontspec[OpticalSize=71]{Minion MM Roman}
MM optical size test \\
```

13 Mac OS X's AAT fonts

Mac OS X's font technology began life before the ubiquitous-OpenType era and revolved around the Apple-invented 'AAT' font format. This format had some advantages (and other disadvantages) but it never became widely popular in the font world.

Nonetheless, this is the font format that was first supported by $X_{\exists}T_{E}X$ (due to its pedigree on Mac OS X in the first place) and was the first font format supported by fontspec. A number of fonts distributed with Mac OS X are still in the AAT format, such as 'Skia'. Documents that use these fonts should be compiled with $X_{\exists}T_{E}X$ using the xdv2pdf driver, as opposed to the default xdvipdfmx. E.g.,

```
xelatex -output-driver="xdv2pdf" filename.tex
```

Mac OS X also supports Multiple Master fonts, which are discussed in Section 14.

13.1 Ligatures

Ligatures refer to the replacement of two separate characters with a specially drawn glyph for functional or æsthetic reasons. For AAT fonts, you may choose from any combination of Required, Common, Rare (or Discretionary), Logos, Rebus, Diphthong, Squared, AbbrevSquared, and Icelandic.

Some other Apple AAT fonts have those 'Rare' ligatures contained in the Icelandic feature. Notice also that the old TEX trick of splitting up a ligature with an empty brace pair does not work in XETEX; you must use a 0 pt kern or \hbox (e.g., \null) to split the characters up if you do not want a ligature to be performed (the usual examples for when this might be desired are words like 'shelffull').

13.2 Letters

The Letters feature specifies how the letters in the current font will look. For AAT fonts, you may choose from Normal, Uppercase, Lowercase, SmallCaps, and InitialCaps.

13.3 Numbers

The Numbers feature defines how numbers will look in the selected font. For AAT fonts, they may be a combination of Lining or OldStyle and Proportional or Monospaced (the latter is good for tabular material). The synonyms Uppercase and Lowercase are equivalent to Lining and OldStyle, respectively. The differences have been shown previously in Section 7.2 on page 13.

Example 43: Contextual gl	yph for the beginnings and ends of words.
where is all the vegemite	<pre>\newfontface\fancy [Contextuals={WordInitial,WordFinal}]</pre>
Example 44: A contextual feature for not need to be marked u	the 'long s' can be convenient as the character does p explicitly.
'Inner' fwashes can <i>fometimes</i> contain the archaic long s.	\fontspec[Contextuals=Inner]{Hoefler Text} 'Inner' swashes can \emph{sometimes} \\ contain the archaic long~s.

13.4 Contextuals

This feature refers to glyph substitution that vary by their position; things like contextual swashes are implemented here The options for AAT fonts are WordInitial, WordFinal (Example 43), LineInitial, LineFinal, and Inner (Example 44, also called 'non-final' sometimes). As non-exclusive selectors, like the ligatures, you can turn them off by prefixing their name with No.

13.5 Vertical position

The VerticalPosition feature is used to access things like subscript (Inferior) and superscript (Superior) numbers and letters (and a small amount of punctuation, sometimes). The Ordinal option is (supposed to be) contextually sensitive to only raise characters that appear directly after a number. These are shown in Example 45.

The realscripts package (also loaded by xltxtra) redefines the \textsubscript and \textsuperscript commands to use the above font features, including for use in footnote labels.

Example 45:	Vertical position for AAT fonts.
	\fontspec{Skia}
	Normal \fontspec[VerticalPosition=Superior]{Skia}
	Superior
	\fontspec[VerticalPosition=Inferior]{Skia}
N. L. L. L. Suporior	Inferior \\
Normal ^{superior} inferior 1 st 2 nd 3 rd 4 th 0 th 8 ^{abcde}	\fontspec[VerticalPosition=Ordinal]{Skia} 1st 2nd 3rd 4th 0th 8abcde

Example 46: Fractions in AAT fonts. The ^^^2044 glyph is the 'fraction slash' that may be typed in Mac OS X with opt+shift+1; not shown literally here due to font contraints.

Example 47: Alternate design of pre-composed fractions.

13.6 Fractions

Many fonts come with the capability to typeset various forms of fractional material. This is accessed in fontspec with the Fractions feature, which may be turned 0n or 0ff in both AAT and OpenType fonts.

In AAT fonts, the 'fraction slash' or solidus character, is to be used to create fractions. When Fractions are turned On, then only pre-drawn fractions will be used. See Example 46.

Using the Diagonal option (AAT only), the font will attempt to create the fraction from superscript and subscript characters.

Some (Asian fonts predominantly) also provide for the Alternate feature shown in Example 47.

13.7 Variants

The Variant feature takes a single numerical input for choosing different alphabetic shapes. Don't mind my fancy Example 48:) I'm just looping through the nine (!) variants of Zapfino.

See Section 15 on page 44 for a way to assign names to variants, which should be done on a per-font basis.

13.8 Alternates

Selection of Alternates *again* must be done numerically; see Example 49. See Section 15 on page 44 for a way to assign names to alternates, which should be done on a per-font basis.

Example 48: Nine variants of Zapfino.



\newcounter{var}\newcounter{trans}
\whiledo{\value{var}<9}{%
 \stepcounter{trans}%
 \edef\1{%
 \noexpand\fontspec[Variant=\thevar,
 Color=005599\thetrans\thetrans]{Zapfino}}\1%
 \makebox[0.75\width]{d}%
 \stepcounter{var}}</pre>

Example 49: Alternate shape selection must be numerical.

Sphinx Of Black Quartz, Judge Mr Vow Sphinx Of Black Quartz, Judge Mr Vow \fontspec[Alternate=0]{Hoefler Text Italic}
Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow} \\
\fontspec[Alternate=1]{Hoefler Text Italic}
Sphinx Of Black Quartz, {\scshape Judge My Vow}

13.9 Style

The options of the Style feature are defined in AAT as one of the following: Display, Engraved, IlluminatedCaps, Italic, Ruby, 10 TallCaps, or TitlingCaps.

Typical examples for these features are shown in Section 10.10.

13.10 CJK shape

There have been many standards for how CJK ideographic glyphs are 'supposed' to look. Some fonts will contain many alternate glyphs in order to be able to display these gylphs correctly in whichever form is appropriate. Both AAT and OpenType fonts support the following CJKShape options: Traditional, Simplified, JIS1978, JIS1983, JIS1990, and Expert. OpenType also supports the NLC option.

13.11 Character width

See Section 10.16 on page 31 for relevant examples; the features are the same between OpenType and AAT fonts. AAT also allows CharacterWidth=Default to return to the original font settings.

13.12 Vertical typesetting

TODO: improve!

X_HT_EX provides for vertical typesetting simply with the ability to rotate the individual glyphs as a font is used for typesetting, as shown in Example 50.

¹⁰'Ruby' refers to a small optical size, used in Japanese typography for annotations.

Example 50: Vertical typesetting.

共産主義者は

比室主義皆よ

\fontspec{Hiragino Mincho Pro} \verttext

\fontspec[Renderer=AAT, Vertical=RotatedGlyphs]{Hiragino Mincho Pro} \rotatebox{-90}{\verttext}% requires the graphicx package

No actual provision is made for typesetting top-to-bottom languages; for an example of how to do this, see the vertical Chinese example provided in the XaTeX documentation.

13.13 Diacritics

Diacritics are marks, such as the acute accent or the tilde, applied to letters; they usually indicate a change in pronunciation. In Arabic scripts, diacritics are used to indicate vowels. You may either choose to Show, Hide or Decompose them in AAT fonts. The Hide option is for scripts such as Arabic which may be displayed either with or without vowel markings. E.g., \fontspec[Diacritics=Hide]{...}

Some older fonts distributed with Mac OS X included '0/' etc. as shorthand for writing 'Ø' under the label of the Diacritics feature. If you come across such fonts, you'll want to turn this feature off (imagine typing hello/goodbye and getting 'helløgoodbye' instead!) by decomposing the two characters in the diacritic into the ones you actually want. I recommend using the proper LaTeX input conventions for obtaining such characters instead.

13.14 Annotation

Various Asian fonts are equipped with a more extensive range of numbers and numerals in different forms. These are accessed through the Annotation feature (see Example 51) with the following options: Off, Box, RoundedBox, Circle, BlackCircle, Parenthesis, Period, RomanNumerals, Diamond, BlackSquare, BlackRoundSquare, and DoubleCircle.

14 AAT & Multiple Master font axes

Multiple Master and AAT font specifications both provide continuous variation along font parameters. For example, they don't have just regular and bold weights, they can have any bold weight you like between the two extremes.

Weight, Width, and OpticalSize are supported by this package. Skia, which is distributed with Mac OS X, has two of these variable parameters, allowing for the demonstration in Example 52. Variations along a multiple master font's optical size axis has been shown previously in Section 8.6 on page 19.

Example 52: Continuously variable font parameters. These fonts are unfortunately quite rare.

	\fontspec[Weight=0.5,Width=3]{Skia}	
Really light and extended Skia Really fat and condensed Skia	Really light and extended Skia	\\
	\fontspec[Weight=2,Width=0.5]{Skia}	
	Really fat and condensed Skia	

Part V

Programming interface

This is the beginning of some work to provide some hooks that use fontspec for various macro programming purposes.

15 Defining new features

This package cannot hope to contain every possible font feature. Three commands are provided for selecting font features that are not provided for out of the box. If you are using them a lot, chances are I've left something out, so please let me know.

\newAATfeature

\newICUfeature

\newopentypefeature

New AAT features may be created with this command:

\newAATfeature{\langle feature \rangle \} \{\langle option \rangle \} \langle \langle feature \cdot code \rangle \} \langle \langle \langle feature \langle \l

Use the X_HT_EX file AAT-info. tex to obtain the code numbers. See Example 53.

New OpenType features may be created with this command:

 $\newICUfeature{\langle feature \rangle}{\langle option \rangle}{\langle feature tag \rangle}$

Example 53: Assigning new AAT features.

This is XeTeX by Jonathan Kew.

\newAATfeature{Alternate}{HoeflerSwash}{17}{1}
\fontspec[Alternate=HoeflerSwash]{Hoefler Text Italic}
This is XeTeX by Jonathan Kew.

Example 54: Assi	igning new a	arbitary i	features.
------------------	--------------	------------	-----------

\newfontfeature{AvoidD}{Special=Avoid d-collisions} \newfontfeature{NoAvoidD}{Special=!Avoid d-collisions}

\fontspec[NoAvoidD, Variant=1]{Zapfino} sockdolager rubdown

Example 55: Using raw font features directly.

PAGELLA SMALL CAPS

\fontspec[RawFeature=+smcp]{TeX Gyre Pagella} Pagella small caps

The synonym \newopentypefeature is provided for LuaLATEX users. Here's what it would look like in practise:

\newopentypefeature{Style}{NoLocalForms}{-locl}

\newfontfeature

In case the above commands do not accommodate the desired font feature (perhaps a new XTTFX feature that fontspec hasn't been updated to support), a command is provided to pass arbitrary input into the font selection string:

 $\newfontfeature{\langle name \rangle} {\langle input string \rangle}$

For example, Zapfino contains the feature 'Avoid d-collisions'. To access it with this package, you could do some like that shown in Example 54

The advantage to using the \newAATfeature and \newICUfeature commands instead of \newfontfeature is that they check if the selected font actually contains the desired font feature at load time. By contrast, \newfontfeature will not give a warning for improper input.

Going behind fontspec's back 16

Expert users may wish not to use fontspec's feature handling at all, while still taking advantage of its LATEX font selection conveniences. The RawFeature font feature allows literal XaTeX font feature selection when you happen to have the OpenType feature tag memorised.

Multiple features can either be included in a single declaration:

[RawFeature=+smcp;+onum]

or with multiple declarations:

[RawFeature=+smcp, RawFeature=+onum]

Renaming existing features & options 17

If you don't like the name of a particular font feature, it may be aliased to an-\aliasfontfeature

Example 56	5: Renaming font features.
Roman Letters And Swash	\aliasfontfeature{ItalicFeatures}{IF} \fontspec[IF = {Alternate=1}]{Hoefler Text} Roman Letters \itshape And Swash
Example 57: F	Renaming font feature options.
Vertic \fontspec[Vert Pos=Sci I	VerticalPosition}{ScientificInferior}{Sci Inf}

 $S_{\text{cientific}} I_{\text{nferior}: 12345}$ Scientific Inferior: 12345

other with the \aliasfontfeature{ $\langle existing\ name \rangle$ }{ $\langle new\ name \rangle$ } command, such as shown in Example 56.

Spaces in feature (and option names, see below) *are* allowed. (You may have noticed this already in the lists of OpenType scripts and languages).

\aliasfontfeatureoption

If you wish to change the name of a font feature option, it can be aliased to another with the command $\aliasfontfeatureoption{<math>\langle font \, feature \rangle$ }{ $\langle existing \, name \rangle$ }, such as shown in Example 57.

This example demonstrates an important point: when aliasing the feature options, the *original* feature name must be used when declaring to which feature the option belongs.

Only feature options that exist as sets of fixed strings may be altered in this way. That is, Proportional can be aliased to Prop in the Letters feature, but 550099BB cannot be substituted for Purple in a Color specification. For this type of thing, the <text> newfontfeature command should be used to declare a new, e.g., PurpleColor feature:

\newfontfeature{PurpleColor}{color=550099BB}

Except that this example was written before support for named colours was implemented. But you get the idea.

18 Programming details

In some cases, it is useful to know what the LaTeX font family of a specific fontspec font is. After a \fontspec-like command, this is stored inside the \zf@family macro. Otherwise, LaTeX's own \f@family macro can be useful here, too. The raw TeX font that is defined is stored temporarily in \zf@basefont.

The following commands in expl3 syntax may be used for writing codes that interface with fontspec-loaded fonts. All of the following conditionals also exist with T and F suffices as well as TF.

\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).

Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for \fontspec_if_opentype:TF LuaTeX fonts.

Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1. \fontspec_if_feature:nTF E.g.:\fontspec_if_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font

is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and \fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF raw OpenType language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g.: \fontspec_if_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnum} {True} {False}. Returns false

if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec_if_script:nTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False}. Returns false if the font is not

loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec_if_language:nTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag

#1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}. Returns false if the

font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

\fontspec_if_language:nnTF Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag

#2 in script #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_language:nnTF {cyrl} {SRB} {True} {False}.

Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.

fontspec_if_current_script:nTF Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script

tag #1.

ntspec_if_current_language:nTF Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType lan-

guage tag #1.

\fontspec_set_family:Nnn #1 : family

#2: fontspec features

#3: font name

Defines a new font family from given $\langle features \rangle$ and $\langle font \rangle$, and stores the name in the variable \(\lambda amily \rangle \). See the standard fontspec user commands for applications

of this function.

Part VI

The patching/improvement of LATEX 2ε and other packages

Derived originally from xltxtra, this package contains patches to various LATEX components and third-party packages to improve the default behaviour.

19 Inner emphasis

fixltx2e's method for checking for "inner" emphasis is a little fragile in X_HT_EX, because font slant information might be missing from the font. Therefore, we use LAT_EX's NFSS information, which is more likely to be correct.

20 Unicode footnote symbols

By default LaTeX defines symbolic footnote characters in terms of commands that don't resolve well; better results can be achieved by using specific Unicode characters or proper LICRs with the xunicode package.

This problem has been solved by loading the fixltx2e package.

21 Verbatim

Many verbatim mechanisms assume the existence of a 'visible space' character that exists in the ASCII space slot of the typewriter font. This character is known in Unicode as U+2434: BOX OPEN, which looks like this: '_'.

When a Unicode typewriter font is used, LATEX no longer prints visible spaces for the verbatim* environment and \verb* command. This problem is fixed by using the correct Unicode glyph, and the following packages are patched to do the same: listings, fancyvrb, moreverb, and verbatim.

In the case that the typewriter font does not contain '_', the Latin Modern Mono font is used as a fallback.

22 Discretionary hyphenation: \-

LATEX defines the macro \- to insert discretionary hyphenation points. However, it is hard-coded in LATEX to use the hyphen - character. Since fontspec makes it easy to change the hyphenation character on a per font basis, it would be nice if \-adjusted automatically — and now it does.

Part VII

fontspec.sty

23 Implementation

Herein lie the implementation details of this package. Welcome! It was my first. For some reason, I decided to prefix all the package internal command names and variables with zf. I don't know why I chose those letters, but I guess I just liked the look/feel of them together at the time. (Possibly inspired by Hermann Zapf.)

```
1 \RequirePackage{expl3,xparse}
                        2\input binhex.tex % before expl syntax!
                        3 \ExplSyntaxOn
                        4\msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {not-pdftex}
                        5 {
                        6 Requires XeTeX or LuaTeX to function!
                        7 }
                        8\xetex_if_engine:F {
                        9 \luatex_if_engine:TF {
                       10
                              \RequirePackage{luatextra}[2010/05/10]
                              \luatexRequireModule{fontspec}
                          }{
                              \msg_fatal:nn {fontspec} {not-pdftex}
                       15 }
\xetex_or_luatex:nn Use #1 if X¬T¬X or #2 if LuaT¬X.
                       16 \xetex_if_engine:TF
                       17 { \cs_new_eq:NN \xetex_or_luatex:nn \use_i:nn }
                           { \luatex_if_engine:T
                             { \cs_new_eq:NN \xetex_or_luatex:nn \use_ii:nn }
\xetex_or_luatex:nnn Use #1 and ({\#2}) if X_{\overline{1}}T_{\overline{1}}X) or ({\#3}) if LuaT_{\overline{1}}X).
                       21 \xetex_if_engine:TF
                       22  { \cs_new:Npn \xetex_or_luatex:nnn #1#2#3 {#1{#2}} }
                       23 {
                              \luatex_if_engine:T
                       24
                               { \cs_new:Npn \xetex_or_luatex:nnn #1#2#3 {#1{#3}} }
                          }
```

23.1 Bits and pieces

Conditionals

```
27\bool_new:N \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool
28\bool_new:N \l_fontspec_nobf_bool
29\bool_new:N \l_fontspec_noit_bool
30\bool_new:N \l_fontspec_nosc_bool
```

```
31\bool_new:N \l_fontspec_tfm_bool
32\bool_new:N \l_fontspec_atsui_bool
33 \bool_new:N \l_fontspec_icu_bool
34 \bool_new:N \l_fontspec_mm_bool
35\bool_new:N \l_fontspec_graphite_bool
For dealing with legacy maths
36\bool_new:N \g_fontspec_math_euler_bool
37\bool_new:N \g_fontspec_math_lucida_bool
38 \bool_new:N \g_fontspec_package_euler_loaded_bool
For package options:
39 \bool_new:N \g_fontspec_cfg_bool
40 \bool_new:N \g_fontspec_math_bool
Counters
41 \int_new: N \l_fontspec_script_int
42 \int_new:N \l_fontspec_language_int
43 \int_new:N \l_fontspec_strnum_int
Temporary definition until expl3 has been updated to include this:
44 \cs_set:Npn \use:x #1 { \edef\@tempa{#1}\@tempa }
46\cs_if_exist:NF \str_if_eq:xxTF {
47 \cs_set_eq:NN \str_if_eq_p:xx \tl_if_eq_p:xx
48 \cs_set_eq:NN \str_if_eq:xxTF \tl_if_eq:xxTF
49 \cs_{eq:NN \str_if_eq:xxT} \tl_if_eq:xxT
0 \csc_{eq:NN \str_if_eq:xxF} \tl_if_eq:xxF
cs_{eq}:NN \str_{if_{eq_p:nn}} \tl_{if_{eq_p:nn}}
52 \cs_set_eq:NN \str_if_eq:nnTF \tl_if_eq:nnTF
53 \cs_set_eq:NN \str_if_eq:nnT \tl_if_eq:nnT
54 \cs_set_eq:NN \str_if_eq:nnF \tl_if_eq:nnF
55 }
56 \cs_set:Npn \use_v:nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5 {#5}
57 \cs_set:Npn \use_iv:nnnnn #1#2#3#4#5 {#4}
   Need these:
58 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \str_if_eq:nnTF {nv}
59 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \int_set:Nn {Nv}
60 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_gset:Nn {cV}
61 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_setkeys:xx #1#2
62 {
63 \use:x { \exp_not:N \setkeys*[zf]{#1}{#2} }
64 }
65 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_setkeys:xxx #1#2#3
67 \use:x { \exp_not:N \setkeys*[zf@#1]{#2}{#3} }
68 }
```

23.2 Error/warning/info messages

Shorthands for messages:

```
69 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_error:n
                                    { \msg_error:nn
                                                         {fontspec} }
70 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_error:nx
                                     { \msg_error:nnx
                                                         {fontspec} }
71 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_warning:n { \msg_warning:nn
                                                        {fontspec} }
72\cs_new:Npn \fontspec_warning:nx { \msg_warning:nnx {fontspec} }
73\cs_new:Npn \fontspec_warning:nxx { \msg_warning:nxx {fontspec} }
74 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_info:n
                                   { \msg_info:nn
                                                         {fontspec} }
75 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_info:nx
                                    { \msg_info:nnx
                                                         {fontspec} }
76 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_info:nxx { \msg_info:nxx
                                                         {fontspec} }
77 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_trace:n
                                    { \msg_trace:nn
                                                         {fontspec} }
   Errors:
78 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-size-info}
79 {
80 Size information must be supplied.
81 For example, SizeFeatures={Size={8-12},...}.
82 }
83 \msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {rename-feature-not-exist}
84 {
    The feature #1 doesn't appear to be defined.
85
86 }
87 {
88~ It ^{\sim} looks ^{\sim} like ^{\sim} you're ^{\sim} trying ^{\sim} to ^{\sim} rename ^{\sim} a ^{\sim} feature ^{\sim} that ^{\sim} doesn't ^{\sim} exist.
89 }
90 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-glyph}
91 {
92 '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain glyph #1.
93 }
94 \msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {unknown-options}
95 {
    The following font options are not recognised:\\
    \space\space\space #1
97
98 }
99 {
100 There is probably a typo in the font feature selection.
101 }
102 \msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {euler-too-late}
103 {
104 The euler package must be loaded BEFORE fontspec.
105 }
106 {
    fontspec only overwrites euler's attempt to\\
107
    define the math text fonts if fontspec is\\
    loaded after euler. Type <return to proceed\\</pre>
109
110 with incorrect \string\mathit, \string\mathbf, etc.
111 }
112 \msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {no-xcolor}
113 {
114 Cannot load named colours without the xcolor package.
115 }
```

```
116 {
117 Sorry, ~ I ~ can't ~ do ~ anything ~ to ~ help. ~ Instead ~ of ~ loading\\
118 the color package, use xcolor instead. It's better.
119 }
120 \msg_new:nnnn {fontspec} {unknown-color-model}
122 Error loading colour '#1'; unknown colour model.
123 }
124 {
125 Sorry, ~ I ~ can't ~ do ~ anything ~ to ~ help. ~ Please ~ report ~ this ~ error\\
126 to my developer with a minimal example that causes the problem.
127 }
Warnings:
128 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {addfontfeatures-ignored}
130 \string\addfontfeature (s) ignored;\\
131 it cannot be used with a font that wasn't selected by fontspec.
133 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {feature-option-overwrite}
135 Option '#2' of font feature '#1' overwritten.
136 }
137 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist-latn}
138 {
139 Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.\\
'Latin' script used instead.
141 }
142 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {script-not-exist}
144 Font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl' does not contain script '#1'.
146 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist}
148 '\XKV@tfam=\XKV@tkey' feature not supported\\
149 for AAT font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
150 }
151 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font}
153 AAT feature '\XKV@tfam=\XKV@tkey' (#1) not available\\
in font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'.
156 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist}
157 {
    '\XKV@tfam=\XKV@tkey' feature not supported\\
158
159 for ICU font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
160 }
161 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font}
163 OpenType feature '\XKV@tfam=\XKV@tkey' (#1) not available\\
164 for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl', \\
165 with script '\l_fontspec_script_name_tl', and language '\l_fontspec_lang_name_tl'.
```

```
166 }
167 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-opticals}
168 {
     \verb|`l_fontspec_fontname_tl'|^a doesn't^a appear^to^have^an^Optical^Size^axis.|
169
170 }
171 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {language-not-exist}
172 {
173 Language '#1' not available\\
    for font '\l_fontspec_fontname_tl'
    with `script' '\l_fontspec_script_name_tl'.\
175
    'Default' anguage used instead.
176
177 }
178 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-xetex-feature}
180 Ignored XeTeX only feature: '#1'.
181 }
182 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {only-luatex-feature}
183 {
184 Ignored LuaTeX only feature: '#1'.
185 }
186 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping}
187 {
    Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.
188
189 }
190 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtex}
191 {
    Input mapping not (yet?) supported in LuaTeX.\\
193 Use "Ligatures=TeX" instead of "Mapping=tex-text".
194 }
195 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {cm-default-obsolete}
196 {
197 The "cm-default" package option is obsolete.
198 }
Info messages:
199 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {defining-font}
200 {
201 Defining font family for '#2' with options [\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl #1].
202 }
203 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {defining-raw}
204 {
    Defining shape
205
     '\prg_case_str:nnn {#1} {
206
      {\mddefault/\updefault} {normal}
207
      {\mddefault/\scdefault} {small caps}
208
      {\bfdefault/\updefault} {bold}
209
      {\bfdefault/\scdefault} {bold small caps}
210
211
      {\mddefault/\itdefault} {italic}
212
      {\mddefault/\sidefault} {italic small caps}
213
      {\bfdefault/\itdefault} {bold~ italic}
      {\bfdefault/\sidefault} {bold italic small caps}
215 } {#1}'~
```

```
216 with NFSS specification: \\
217 \label{local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local_local
218 }
219 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-font-shape}
220 {
            Could not resolv font #1 (it probably doesn't exist).
222 }
223 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {set-scale}
224 {
225
            \l_fontspec_fontname_tl\space scale ~=~ \l_fontspec_scale_tl.
226 }
227 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {setup-math}
228 {
            Adjusting the maths setup (use [no-math] to avoid this).
229
230 }
231 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {no-scripts}
233 Font \l_fontspec_fontname_tl\space does not contain any OpenType 'Script' information.
234 }
235 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice}
236 {
237 Opacity set twice, in both Colour and Opacity.
238 Using specification "Opacity=#1".
239 }
240 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {opa-twice-col}
241 {
242 Opacity set twice, in both Opacity and Colour.
243 Using an opacity specification in hex of "#1/FF".
244 }
245 \msg_new:nnn {fontspec} {bad-colour}
246 {
247 Bad colour declaration "#1".
248 Colour must be one of:\\
249 * a named xcolor colour\\
250 * a six-digit hex colour RRGGBB\\
251 * an eight-digit hex colour RRGGBBTT with opacity
252 }
```

23.3 Option processing

```
253 \DeclareOption{cm-default}{
254   \fontspec_warning:n {cm-default-obsolete}
255 }
256 \DeclareOption{math}{\bool_set_true:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}
257 \DeclareOption{no-math}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}
258 \DeclareOption{config}{\bool_set_true:N \g_fontspec_cfg_bool}
259 \DeclareOption{no-config}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_cfg_bool}
260 \DeclareOption{quiet}{
261   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { warning } { info }
262   \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
263 }
```

```
264 \DeclareOption{silent}{
265 \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { warning } { none }
266 \msg_redirect_module:nnn { fontspec } { info } { none }
267 }
268 \ExecuteOptions{config,math}
269 \ProcessOptions*
```

23.4 Packages

We require the calc package for autoscaling and a recent version of the xkeyval package for option processing.

```
270 \RequirePackage{calc}
271 \RequirePackage{xkeyval}[2005/05/07]
```

New for LuaTEX, we load a new package called 'fontspec-patches' designed to incorporate the hidden but useful parts of the old xltxtra package.

272 \RequirePackage{fontspec-patches}

23.5 Encodings

Frank Mittelbach has recommended using the 'EUx' family of font encodings to experiment with Unicode. Now that X_HT_EX can find fonts in the texmf tree, the Latin Modern OpenType fonts can be used as the defaults. See the euenc collection of files for how this is implemented.

```
273 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn {\tl_set:Nn \zf@enc} {EU1} {EU2} 
274 \tl_set:Nn \rmdefault {lmr} 
275 \tl_set:Nn \sfdefault {lmss} 
276 \tl_set:Nn \ttdefault {lmtt} 
277 \RequirePackage[\zf@enc]{fontenc} 
278 \tl_set_eq:NN \UTFencname \zf@enc % for xunicode
```

Dealing with a couple of the problems introduced by babel:

```
279 \tl_set_eq:NN \cyrillicencoding \zf@enc
280 \tl_set_eq:NN \latinencoding \zf@enc
281 \g@addto@macro \document {
282 \tl_set_eq:NN \cyrillicencoding \zf@enc
283 \tl_set_eq:NN \latinencoding \zf@enc
284 }
```

That latin encoding definition is repeated to suppress font warnings. Something to do with \select@language ending up in the . aux file which is read at the beginning of the document.

xunicode Now we load xunicode, working around its internal X₄T_EX check when under LuaT_EX.

```
285 \xetex_or_luatex:nn
286 {
287 \RequirePackage{xunicode}
288 }
289 {
290 \cs_set_eq:NN \fontspec_tmp: \XeTeXpicfile
291 \cs_set:Npn \XeTeXpicfile {}
```

```
292
   \RequirePackage{xunicode}
293
    \cs_set_eq:NN \XeTeXpicfile \fontspec_tmp:
294 }
```

23.6 User commands

This section contains the definitions of the commands detailed in the user documentation. Only the 'top level' definitions of the commands are contained herein; they all use or define macros which are defined or used later on in Section 23.9 on page 65.

23.6.1 Font selection

\fontspec

This is the main command of the package that selects fonts with various features. It takes two arguments: the Mac OS X font name and the optional requested features of that font. It simply runs \zf@fontspec, which takes the same arguments as the top level macro and puts the new-fangled font family name into the global \zf@family. Then this new font family is selected.

```
295 \DeclareDocumentCommand \fontspec { O() m } {
296 \fontencoding {\zf@enc}
    \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \f@family {#1}{#2}
    \selectfont
299
    \ignorespaces
300 }
```

\setmainfont \setsansfont \setmonofont

The following three macros perform equivalent operations setting the default font (using \let rather than \renewcommand because \zf@family will change in the future) for a particular family: 'roman', sans serif, or typewriter (monospaced). I end them with \normalfont so that if they're used in the document, the change registers immediately.

```
301 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmainfont { O() m } {
302 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \rmdefault {#1}{#2}
303 \normalfont
304 }
305 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setsansfont { O{} m } {
306 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \sfdefault {#1}{#2}
307 \normalfont
308 }
309 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmonofont { O{} m } {
310 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \ttdefault {#1}{#2}
311
    \normalfont
```

\setromanfont This is the old name for \setmainfont, retained for backwards compatibility.

```
313 \cs_set_eq:NN \setromanfont \setmainfont
```

\setmathrm \setmathsf

These commands are analogous to \setromanfont and others, but for selecting the font used for \mathrm, etc. They can only be used in the preamble of the document. \setboldmathrm \setboldmathrm is used for specifying which fonts should be used in \boldmath.

```
\setmathtt _{314} \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathrm { O{} m } {
```

```
\fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_fontspec_mathrm_tl {#1}{#2}
315
316 }
317 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setboldmathrm { O{} m } {
318 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_fontspec_bfmathrm_tl {#1}{#2}
320 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathsf { O{} m } {
321 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_fontspec_mathsf_tl {#1}{#2}
322 }
323 \DeclareDocumentCommand \setmathtt { O{} m } {
324 \fontspec_set_family:Nnn \g_fontspec_mathtt_tl {#1}{#2}
325 }
326 \@onlypreamble\setmathrm
327 \@onlypreamble\setboldmathrm
328 \@onlypreamble\setmathsf
329 \@onlypreamble\setmathtt
If the commands above are not executed, then \rmdefault (etc.) will be used.
330 \def\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl{\rmdefault}
331 \def\g_fontspec_mathsf_tl{\sfdefault}
332 \def\g_fontspec_mathtt_tl{\ttdefault}
333 \tl_clear:N \g_fontspec_bfmathrm_tl
```

\newfontfamily
\newfontface

This macro takes the arguments of \fontspec with a prepended \(\lambda instance cmd\rangle\) (code for middle optional argument generated by Scott Pakin's newcommand.py). This command is used when a specific font instance needs to be referred to repetitively (e.g., in a section heading) since continuously calling \zf@fontspec is inefficient because it must parse the option arguments every time.

\fontspec_select:nn defines a font family and saves its name in \zf@family. This family is then used in a typical NFSS \fontfamily declaration, saved in the macro name specified.

```
334 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontfamily { m O{} m } {
335
    \fontspec_select:nn{#2}{#3}
    \use:x {
336
      \exp_not:N \DeclareRobustCommand \exp_not:N #1 {
337
338
         \exp_not:N \fontencoding {\zf@enc}
         \exp_not:N \fontfamily {\zf@family} \exp_not:N \selectfont
339
340
      }
341
   }
342 }
```

\newfontface uses an undocumented feature of the BoldFont feature; if its argument is empty (*i.e.*, BoldFont={}), then no bold font is searched for.

```
343 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontface { m O{} m } {
344 \newfontfamily #1 [ BoldFont={},ItalicFont={},SmallCapsFont={},#2 ] {#3}
345 }
```

23.6.2 Font feature selection

\defaultfontfeatures

This macro takes one argument that consists of all of feature options that will be applied by default to all subsequent \fontspec, et al., commands. It stores its value

in \g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl (initialised empty), which is concatenated with the individual macro choices in the [...] macro.

```
346 \DeclareDocumentCommand \defaultfontfeatures {m} {
347 \tl_set:Nn \g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl {#1,}
348 }
349 \tl_clear:N \g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl
```

\addfontfeatures

In order to be able to extend the feature selection of a given font, two things need to be known: the currently selected features, and the currently selected font. Every time a font family is created, this information is saved inside a control sequence with the name of the font family itself.

This macro extracts this information, then appends the requested font features to add to the already existing ones, and calls the font again with the top level \fontspec command.

The default options are *not* applied (which is why $\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl$ is emptied inside the group; this is allowed as $\f_fontspec_select:nn$), so this means that the only added features to the font are strictly those specified by this command.

\addfontfeature is defined as an alias, as I found that I often typed this instead when adding only a single font feature.

```
350 \DeclareDocumentCommand \addfontfeatures {m} {
    \ifcsname zf@family@fontdef\f@family\endcsname
352
       \group_begin:
353
         \tl_clear:N \g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl
354
         \use:x {
           \exp_not:N\fontspec_select:nn
355
             {\csname zf@family@options\f@family\endcsname,#1}
356
             {\csname zf@family@fontname\f@family\endcsname}
357
358
         }
       \group_end:
359
       \fontfamily\zf@family\selectfont
360
361
       \fontspec_warning:n {addfontfeatures-ignored}
362
    \fi
363
    \ignorespaces
364
365 }
366 \cs_set_eq:NN \addfontfeature \addfontfeatures
```

23.6.3 Defining new font features

\newfontfeature

\newfontfeature takes two arguments: the name of the feature tag by which to reference it, and the string that is used to select the font feature.

```
367 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontfeature {mm} {
368 \define@key[zf]{options}{#1}[]{
369 \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+zf-#1}
370 \fontspec_update_featstr:n {#2}
371 }
372 }
```

\newAATfeature

This command assigns a new AAT feature by its code (#2,#3) to a new name (#1). Better than \newfontfeature because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```
373 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newAATfeature {mmmm} {
374  \unless\ifcsname zf@options@#1\endcsname
375  \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{#1}
376  \fi
377  \key@ifundefined[zf]{#1}{#2}{}{
378  \fontspec_warning:nxx {feature-option-overwrite}{#1}{#2}
379  }
380  \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{}
381}
```

\newICUfeature \newopentypefeature This command assigns a new OpenType feature by its abbreviation (#2) to a new name (#1). Better than \newfontfeature because it checks if the feature exists in the font it's being used for.

```
382 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newICUfeature {mmm} {
383  \unless\ifcsname zf@options@#1\endcsname
384  \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{#1}
385  \fi
386  \key@ifundefined[zf]{#1}{#2}{}{
387  \fontspec_warning:nxx {feature-option-overwrite}{#1}{#2}
388  }
389  \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{#1}{#2}{}{}{#3}
390 }
391 \cs_set_eq:NN \newopentypefeature \newICUfeature
```

\aliasfontfeature \aliasfontfeatureoption

User commands for renaming font features and font feature options. Provided I've been consistent, they should work for everything.

```
392\DeclareDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeature {mm} {\multi@alias@key{#1}{#2}}
393\DeclareDocumentCommand \aliasfontfeatureoption {mmm} {
394 \keyval@alias@key[zf@feat]{#1}{#2}{#3}
395}
```

\newfontscript

Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType 'scripts', mapping logical names to OpenType script tags. Iterates though the scripts in the selected font to check that it's a valid feature choice, and then prepends the (XaTeX) \font feature string with the appropriate script selection tag.

```
396 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontscript {mm}
397 {
    \fontspec_new_script:nn {#1} {#2}
    \fontspec_new_script:nn {#2} {#2}
399
400 }
401 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_new_script:nn #1#2
402 {
    \define@key[zf@feat]{Script}{#1}[]{
403
404
       \fontspec_check_script:nTF {#2} {
         \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+script=#1}
405
         \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {#2}
406
407
         \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
```

```
408
         \fontspec_check_script:nTF {latn} {
409
410
           \fontspec_warning:nx {script-not-exist-latn} {#1}
411
           \setkeys[zf@feat]{Script}{Latin}
412
413
            \fontspec_warning:nx {script-not-exist} {#1}
414
415
       }
    }
416
417 }
```

\newfontlanguage

Mostly used internally, but also possibly useful for users, to define new OpenType 'languages', mapping logical names to OpenType language tags. Iterates though the languages in the selected font to check that it's a valid feature choice, and then prepends the (X¬TEX) \font feature string with the appropriate language selection tag.

```
418 \DeclareDocumentCommand \newfontlanguage {mm}
419 {
     \fontspec_new_lang:nn {#1} {#2}
420
     \fontspec_new_lang:nn {#2} {#2}
421
422 }
423 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_new_lang:nn #1#2
424 {
     \define@key[zf@feat]{Lang}{#1}[]{
425
426
       \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {#2} {
427
         \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+lang=#1}
         \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {#2}
428
         \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
429
430
         \fontspec_warning:nx {language-not-exist} {#1}
431
         \setkeys[zf@feat]{Lang}{Default}
432
433
434
    }
435 }
```

\DeclareFontsExtensions

dfont would never be uppercase, right?

```
436 \DeclareDocumentCommand \DeclareFontsExtensions {m}
437 {
438 \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_extensions_clist { \zap@space #1~\@empty }
439 }
440 \DeclareFontsExtensions{.otf,.ttf,.OTF,.TTF,.ttc,.TTC,.dfont}
```

23.7 Programmer's interface

These functions are not used directly by fontspec when defining fonts; they are designed to be used by other packages who wish to do font-related things on top of fontspec itself.

Because I haven't fully explored how these functions will behave in practise, I am not giving them user-level names. As it becomes more clear which of these should be accessible by document writers, I'll open them up a little more.

All functions are defined assuming that the font to be queried is currently selected as a fontspec font. (I.e., via \fontspec or from a \newfontfamily macro or from \setmainfont and so on.)

```
\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
                               Test whether the currently selected font has been loaded by fontspec.
                               441\prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_fontspec_font: {TF,T,F} {
                                    \cs_if_exist:cTF {g_fontspec_ \f@family _prop} {
                                      \prg_return_true:
                               443
                               444
                                    }{
                               445
                                      \prg_return_false:
                               446
                                    }
                               447 }
\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF
                               Conditional to test if the currently selected font contains the AAT feature (#1,#2).
                               448 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_aat_feature:nn {TF,T,F} {
                                    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF {
                               450
                                      \font_set:Nnn \zf@basefont {\use:c{zf@family@fontdef\f@family}} {\f@size pt}
                                      \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_atsui_bool {
                               451
                                        \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF {#1}{#2}
                               452
                               453
                                           \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                               454
                                      }{
                               455
                                         \prg_return_false:
                               456
                                      }
                               457
                                    }{
                                      \prg_return_false:
                               458
                                    }
                               459
                               460 }
                               Test whether the currently selected font is an OpenType font. Always true for
     \fontspec_if_opentype:TF
                                LuaTeX fonts.
                               461 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_opentype: {TF,T,F} {
                                    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF {
                                      \font_set:Nnn \zf@basefont {\csname zf@family@fontdef\f@family\endcsname} {\f@size pt}
                               463
                               464
                                      \fontspec set font type:
                                      \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                               465
                               466
                                    }{
                               467
                                      \prg_return_false:
                               468
                                    }
                               469 }
                               Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType feature #1.
     \fontspec_if_feature:nTF
                                E.g.: \fontspec_if_feature:nTF {pnum} {True} {False} Returns false if the font
                                is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                               470 \prg_new\_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_feature:n {TF,T,F} {
                               471
                                    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF {
                                      \font_set:Nnn \zf@basefont {\csname zf@family@fontdef\f@family\endcsname} {\f@size pt}
                               472
                               473
                                      \fontspec_set_font_type:
                                      \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
                               474
                                        \int_set:Nv \l_fontspec_script_int {g_fontspec_script_num_(\f@family)_tl}
                               475
                                        \int_set:Nv \l_fontspec_language_int {g_fontspec_lang_num_(\f@family)_tl}
                               476
```

\tl_set:Nv \l_fontspec_script_tl {g_fontspec_script_(\f@family)_tl}

```
\tl_set:Nv \l_fontspec_lang_tl {g_fontspec_lang_(\f@family)_tl}
                            479
                                     \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF {#1} {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
                            480
                            481
                                     \prg_return_false:
                            482
                            483
                                 }{
                            484
                                   \prg_return_false:
                            485
                                 }
                            486 }
                            Test whether the currently selected font with raw OpenType script tag #1 and
\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF
                             raw OpenType language tag #2 contains the raw OpenType feature tag #3. E.g.:
                            \fontspec_if_feature:nTF {latn} {ROM} {pnum} {True} {False} Returns false
                             if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                            487 \prg_new_conditional: Nnn \fontspec_if_feature: nnn {TF,T,F} {
                                 \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF {
                            489
                                   \font_set:Nnn \zf@basefont {\csname zf@family@fontdef\f@family\endcsname} {\f@size pt}
                            490
                                   \fontspec_set_font_type:
                            491
                                   \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
                                     \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {#1}
                            492
                                     \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {#2}
                            493
                                     \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF {#3} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                            494
                            495
                            496
                                      \prg_return_false:
                            497
                                   3
                            498
                                 }{
                                   \prg_return_false:
                            499
                                 }
                            500
                            501 }
                            Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType script #1. E.g.:
   \fontspec_if_script:nTF
                            \fontspec_if_script:nTF {latn} {True} {False} Returns false if the font is not
                             loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                            502 prg_new_conditional:Nnn fontspec_if_script:n {TF,T,F} {
                                 \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF {
                            504
                                   \font_set:Nnn \zf@basefont {\csname zf@family@fontdef\f@family\endcsname} {\f@size pt}
                            505
                                   \fontspec_set_font_type:
                                   \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
                            506
                                     \fontspec_check_script:nTF {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                            507
                            508
                                   }{
                            509
                                      \prg_return_false:
                            510
                            511
                                 }{
                                   \prg_return_false:
                            512
                            513
                                 }
                            514 }
                            Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag
 \fontspec_if_language:nTF
                             #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_language:nTF {ROM} {True} {False}. Returns false if the
                             font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                            515 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_language:n {TF,T,F} {
```

```
517
                                      \font_set:Nnn \zf@basefont {\csname zf@family@fontdef\f@family\endcsname} {\f@size pt}
                               518
                                      \fontspec_set_font_type:
                               519
                                      \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
                               520
                                        \tl_set:Nv \l_fontspec_script_tl {g_fontspec_script_(\f@family)_tl}
                               521
                                        \int_set:Nv \l_fontspec_script_int {g_fontspec_script_num_(\f@family)_tl}
                               522
                                        \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {#1} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                               523
                               524
                                        \prg_return_false:
                               525
                                     }
                               526
                                   }{
                                      \prg_return_false:
                               527
                               528
                                   }
                               529 }
                               Test whether the currently selected font contains the raw OpenType language tag
   \fontspec_if_language:nnTF
                               #2 in script #1. E.g.: \fontspec_if_language:nnTF {cyrl} {SRB} {True} {False}.
                               Returns false if the font is not loaded by fontspec or is not an OpenType font.
                               530 \prg_new\_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_language:nn {TF,T,F} {
                                   \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF {
                               532
                                      \font_set:Nnn \zf@basefont {\csname zf@family@fontdef\f@family\endcsname} {\f@size pt}
                               533
                                      \fontspec_set_font_type:
                                      \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
                               534
                               535
                                        \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_tl {#1}
                                        \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_script_int {#1}
                               536
                                        \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {#2} \prg_return_true: \prg_return_false:
                               537
                                      }{
                               538
                                        \prg_return_false:
                               539
                               540
                               541
                                   }{
                               542
                                      \prg_return_false:
                               543
                               544 }
                               Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType script
fontspec_if_current_script:nTF
                               tag #1.
                               545 \prg_new_conditional: Nnn \fontspec_if_current_script:n {TF,T,F} {
                                    \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF {
                                      547
                                      \fontspec_set_font_type:
                               548
                                      \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
                               549
                                        \str_if_eq:nvTF {#1} {g_fontspec_script_(\f@family)_tl}
                               550
                               551
                                          {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
                               552
                                      }{
                               553
                                        \prg_return_false:
                               554
                                      }
                               555
                                    }{
                                      \prg_return_false:
                               556
                               557
                                    }
                               558 }
```

\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF {

ntspec_if_current_language:nTF

Test whether the currently loaded font is using the specified raw OpenType language tag #1.

```
559 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_if_current_language:n {TF,T,F} {
560 \fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF {
561
       \font_set:Nnn \zf@basefont {\csname zf@family@fontdef\f@family\endcsname} {\f@size pt}
562
       \fontspec_set_font_type:
       \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
563
         \str_if_eq:nvTF {#1} {g_fontspec_lang_(\f@family)_tl}
564
           {\prg_return_true:} {\prg_return_false:}
565
566
         \prg_return_false:
567
568
       }
569
     }{
570
       \prg_return_false:
571
     }
572 }
#1 : family
```

\fontspec_set_family:Nnn

#2 : fontspec features

#3: font name

Defines a new font family from given $\langle \textit{features} \rangle$ and $\langle \textit{font} \rangle$, and stores the name in the variable $\langle \textit{family} \rangle$. See the standard fontspec user commands for applications of this function.

We want to store the actual name of the font family within the $\langle family \rangle$ variable because the actual LATEX family name is automatically generated by fontspec and it's easier to keep it that way.

Please use \fontspec_set_family: Nnn instead of \fontspec_select:nn, which may change in the future.

```
573 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_family:Nnn #1#2#3 {
574 \fontspec_select:nn {#2}{#3}
575 \tl_set_eq:NN #1 \zf@family
576 }
```

23.8 expl3 interface for font loading

Using $\int \int 1={xyz}$ notation doesn't work at present with LuaLaTeX, although it should be the correct way to do things. Continue to use $\int \int 1={xyz}' f$ or now for both engines.

```
577 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn { \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_fontwrap:n #1 } { "#1" } { {#1} }
578 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_fontwrap:n #1 { "#1" }
Beginnings of an 'l3font', I guess:
579 \cs_set_eq:NN \font_set_eq:NN \tex_let:D
580 \cs_new:Npn \font_set:Nnn #1#2#3 {
581 \font #1 = \fontspec_fontwrap:n {#2} ~at~#3\scan_stop:
582 }
583 \cs_new:Npn \font_gset:Nnn #1#2#3 {
584 \global \font #1 = \fontspec_fontwrap:n {#2} ~at~#3\scan_stop:
```

```
\font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF
```

```
586 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \font_glyph_if_exist:Nn {p,TF,T,F} {
587 \etex_iffontchar:D #1 #2 \scan_stop:
588 \prg_return_true:
589 \else:
590 \prg_return_false:
591 \fi:
592 }
```

23.9 Internal macros

The macros from here in are used internally by all those defined above. They are not designed to remain consistent between versions.

\fontspec_select:nn

This is the command that defines font families for use, the underlying procedure of all \fontspec-like commands. Given a list of font features (#1) for a requested font (#2), it will define an NFSS family for that font and put the family name (globally) into \zf@family. The TFX '\font' command is (globally) stored in \zf@basefont.

This macro does its processing inside a group to attempt to restrict the scope of its internal processing. This works to some degree to insulate the internal commands from having to be manually cleared.

```
593 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_select:nn #1#2 {
594 \group_begin:
595 \fontspec_init:
```

\l_fontspec_fontname_tl is used as the generic name of the font being defined. \l_fontspec_fontid_tl is the unique identifier of the font with all its features. \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl is the font specifically to be used as the upright font.

```
596 \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#2}
597 \luatex_if_engine:T {
598 \tl_replace_all_in:Nnn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {^} {}
599 }
600 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontid_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
601 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
```

Now convert the requested features to font definition strings. First the features are parsed for information about font loading (whether it's a named font or external font, etc.), and then information is extracted for the names of the other shape fonts.

Then the mapping from user features to low-level features occurs. This is performed with \fontspec_get_features:n, in which \setkeys retrieves the requested font features and processes them. As \setkeys is run multiple times, some of its information storing only occurs once while we decide if the font family has been defined or not. When the later processing is occuring per-shape this no longer needs to happen; this is indicated by the 'firsttime' conditional.

```
602 \fontspec_preparse_features:nn {#1}{#2}
603 \fontspec_set_scriptlang:
604 \fontspec_get_features:n {}
605 \bool_set_false:N \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool
```

Check if the family is unique and, if so, save its information. (\addfontfeature and other macros use this data.) Then the font family and its shapes are defined in the NFSS.

All NFSS specifications take their default values, so if any of them are redefined, the shapes will be selected to fit in with the current state. For example, if \bfdefault is redefined to b, all bold shapes defined by this package will also be assigned to b.

```
\fontspec_save_family:nT {#2} {
       \fontspec_info:nxx {defining-font} {#1} {#2}
607
608
       \fontspec_save_fontinfo:nn {#1} {#2}
       \DeclareFontFamily{\zf@enc}{\zf@family}{}
609
       \fontspec_set_upright:
610
       \fontspec_set_bold:
611
       \fontspec_set_italic:
612
613
       \fontspec_set_slanted:
614
       \fontspec_set_bold_italic:
615
       \fontspec_set_bold_slanted:
616
617
     \group_end:
618 }
```

\zf@fontspec For backwards compatibility. Do not use this from now on!

```
619 \cs_set_eq:NN \zf@fontspec \fontspec_select:nn
```

\fontspec_preparse_features:nn

Perform the (multi-step) feature parsing process.

```
620 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_preparse_features:nn #1#2 {
```

Detect if external fonts are to be used, possibly automatically, and parse fontspec features for bold/italic fonts and their features.

```
\fontspec_if_detect_external:nT {#2}
     { \setkeys[zf]{preparse-external}{ExternalLocation} }
622
    \fontspec_setkeys:xx {preparse-external} {\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl #1}
```

When \l_fontspec_fontname_tl is augmented with a prefix or whatever to create the name of the upright font (\l_fontspec_fontname_up_t1), this latter is the new 'general font name' to use.

```
\tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl
\fontspec_setkeys:xx {preparse} {\XKV@rm}
\clist_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontfeat_clist \XKV@rm
```

Finally save the 'confirmed' font definition.

```
\fontspec_set_font_type:
                                 \font_gset:Nnn \zf@basefont {\fontspec_fullname:n {\l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl}} {\footspec_fontname_up_tl}} {\foot
                                  \zf@basefont % this is necessary for LuaLaTeX to check the scripts properly
630
631 }
```

fontspec_if_detect_external:nT

Check if either the fontname ends with a known font extension.

```
632 \prg_new_conditional: Nnn \fontspec_if_detect_external:n {T}
    \clist_map_inline:Nn \l_fontspec_extensions_clist
634
635
636
       \bool_set_false:N \l_tmpa_bool
```

\fontspec_fullname:n Constructs the complete font name based on a common piece of info.

```
642 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_fullname:n #1 {
643 \fontspec_namewrap:n { #1 \l_fontspec_extension_tl }
644 \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
645 \l_fontspec_optical_size_tl
646 }
```

\fontspec_save_family:nT

Now we have a unique (in fact, too unique!) string that contains the family name and every option in abbreviated form. This is used with a counter to create a simple NFSS family name for the font we're selecting.

The font name is fully expanded, in case it's defined in terms of macros, before having its spaces zapped.

```
647 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_save_family:n {T} {
    \cs_if_exist:cF {g_fontspec_UID_\l_fontspec_fontid_tl}
649
650
       \cs_if_exist:cTF {g_fontspec_family_#1_int} {
         \int_gincr:c {g_fontspec_family_#1_int}
651
652
       }{
         \int_new:c {g_fontspec_family_#1_int}
653
654
       \edef\@tempa{#1~}
655
656
       \tl_gset:cx {g_fontspec_UID_\l_fontspec_fontid_tl} {
657
         \expandafter\zap@space\@tempa\@empty
658
             ( \int_use:c {g_fontspec_family_#1_int} )
659
660
    }
    \tl_gset:Nv \zf@family {g_fontspec_UID_\l_fontspec_fontid_tl}
661
     \cs_if_exist:cTF {g_fontspec_ \zf@family _prop}
       \prg_return_false: \prg_return_true:
663
664 }
```

\fontspec_set_scriptlang:

Only necessary for OpenType fonts. First check if the font supports scripts, then apply defaults if none are explicitly requested. Similarly with the language settings.

```
665 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_scriptlang: {
    \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
      \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_script_name_tl {
667
668
         \fontspec_check_script:nTF {latn}
669
           \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_name_tl {Latin}
670
          \tl_if_empty:NT \l_fontspec_lang_name_tl {
671
            \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_name_tl {Default}
672
673
674
          \fontspec_setkeys:xxx {feat} {\l_fontspec_script_name_tl}
675
          \fontspec_setkeys:xxx {feat} {Lang} {\l_fontspec_lang_name_tl}
676
```

```
677
                             678
                                        \fontspec_info:n {no-scripts}
                             679
                                      }
                             680
                                    }
                             681
                             682
                                      \tl_if_empty:NT \l_fontspec_lang_name_tl {
                             683
                                        \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_name_tl {Default}
                             684
                                      \fontspec_setkeys:xxx {feat} {\script} {\l_fontspec_script_name_tl}
                             685
                                      \fontspec_setkeys:xxx {feat} {Lang} {\l_fontspec_lang_name_tl}
                             686
                             687
                                    }
                             688
                                 }
                             689 }
\fontspec save fontinfo:nn
                            Saves the relevant font information for future processing.
                             690 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput:Nnn {cnV}
                             691 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \prop_gput:Nnn {cnx}
                             692 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_save_fontinfo:nn #1#2 {
                             693
                             694
                                  \prop_new:c {g_fontspec_ \zf@family _prop}
                                  \prop_gput:cnx {g_fontspec_ \zf@family _prop} {fontname} {#2}
                             696
                                  \label{lem:constant} $$\operatorname{g\_fontspec} \zf@family \_prop} {options} {\g\_fontspec\_default\_fontopts\_tl $$\#1}$ is $$\operatorname{g\_fontspec\_default\_fontopts\_tl $$\#1}$.
                                  \prop_gput:cnx {g_fontspec_ \zf@family _prop} {fontdef} {
                             697
                                        \fontspec_fullname:n {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} :
                             698
                                        \l_fontspec_pre_feat_sclist \l_fontspec_rawfeatures_sclist
                             699
                             700
                             701
                                  \prop_gput:cnV {g_fontspec_ \zf@family _prop} {script-num} \l_fontspec_script_int
                             702
                                  \prop_gput:cnV {g_fontspec_ \zf@family _prop} {lang-num} \l_fontspec_language_int
                                  \prop_gput:cnV {g_fontspec_ \zf@family _prop} {script-tag} \l_fontspec_script_tl
                             703
                                  \prop_gput:cnV {g_fontspec_ \zf@family _prop} {lang-tag} \l_fontspec_lang_tl
                             704
                             705
                                    \tl_gset:cx {zf@family@fontname\zf@family} {#2}
                             706
                             707
                                    \tl_gset:cx {zf@family@options\zf@family} {\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl #1}
                                    \tl_gset:cx {zf@family@fontdef\zf@family} {
                             708
                             709
                                      \fontspec_fullname:n {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} :
                                        \l_fontspec_pre_feat_sclist \l_fontspec_rawfeatures_sclist
                             710
                             711
                                    712
                             713
                                    \tl_gset:cV {g_fontspec_lang_num_(\zf@family)_tl} \l_fontspec_language_int
                                    \tl_gset_eq:cN {g_fontspec_script_(\zf@family)_tl} \l_fontspec_script_tl
                             714
                                    \tl_gset_eq:cN {g_fontspec_lang_(\zf@family)_tl} \l_fontspec_lang_tl
                             715
                             716 }
    \fontspec_set_upright: Sets the upright shape.
                             717 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_upright: {
                                 \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
                                    \mddefault \updefault \l_fontspec_fontfeat_up_clist
                             719
                             720 }
                             The macros [...], et al., are used to store the name of the custom bold, et al., font, if
       \fontspec_set_bold:
```

requested as user options. If they are empty, the default fonts are used.

The extra bold options defined with BoldFeatures are appended to the generic font features. Then, the bold font is defined either as the ATS default ([...] optional argument is to check if there actually is one; if not, the bold NFSS series is left undefined) or with the font specified with the BoldFont feature.

```
721 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_bold: {
                           \bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_nobf_bool {
                             \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl {
                      723
                               \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {/B}
                      724
                                 \bfdefault \updefault \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bf_clist
                      725
                      726
                               \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl
                      727
                                 \bfdefault \updefault \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bf_clist
                      728
                      729
                      730
                           }
                      731 }
 \fontspec_set_italic: And italic in the same way:
                      732 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_italic: {
                          \bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_noit_bool {
                             \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl
                      734
                             735
                      736
                             { \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl
                      737
                                 \mddefault \itdefault \l_fontspec_fontfeat_it_clist
                      738
                           }
                      739 }
\fontspec_set_slanted: And slanted but only if requested:
                      740 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_slanted: {
                      741 \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl {
                      742
                             \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn
                      743
                               \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl \mddefault \sldefault \l_fontspec_fontfeat_sl_clist
                      744 }
                      745 }
```

 $\verb|\fontspec_set_bold_italic:|\\$

If requested, the custom fonts take precedence when choosing the bold italic font. When both italic and bold fonts are requested and the bold italic font hasn't been explicitly specified (a rare occurance, presumably), the new bold font is used to define the new bold italic font.

```
746 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_bold_italic: {
     \bool_if:nF {\l_fontspec_nobf_bool || \l_fontspec_nobf_bool} {
748
       \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl
749
         \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl
750
751
           \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl
752
753
           {
754
             \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
                                                                            {/BI}
755
           }
756
           {
             \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl {/B}
757
758
           }
```

```
759
         }
760
         {
761
           \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl {/I}
762
763
       }
764
       {
765
         \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl
766
       \bfdefault \itdefault \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfit_clist
767
768
    }
769 }
```

\fontspec_set_bold_slanted:

And bold slanted, again, only if requested:

```
770 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_bold_slanted: {
    \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl {
772
      \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl {
773
         \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl {/B}
774
            \bfdefault \sldefault \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
775
      }
776
    }{
777
       \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl
         \bfdefault \sldefault \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
778
779
    }
780 }
```

23.9.1 Fonts

\fontspec_set_font_type:

Now check if the font is to be rendered with ATSUI or ICU. This will either be automatic (based on the font type), or specified by the user via a font feature.

This macro sets booleans accordingly depending if the font in \zf@basefont is an AAT font or an OpenType font or a font with feature axes (either AAT or Multiple Master), respectively.

```
781 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn { \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_font_type: }
782
       \bool_set_false:N \l_fontspec_tfm_bool
783
       \bool_set_false:N \l_fontspec_atsui_bool
784
785
       \bool_set_false:N \l_fontspec_icu_bool
       \bool_set_false:N \l_fontspec_mm_bool
786
       \bool_set_false:N \l_fontspec_graphite_bool
787
       \ifcase\XeTeXfonttype\zf@basefont
788
         \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_tfm_bool
789
790
       \or
         \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_atsui_bool
         \ifnum\XeTeXcountvariations\zf@basefont > \c_zero
792
           \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_mm_bool
793
         \fi
794
       \or
795
         \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_icu_bool
796
```

If automatic, the \l_fontspec_renderer_tl token list will still be empty (other suffices that could be added will be later in the feature processing), and if it

is indeed still empty, assign it a value so that the other weights of the font are specifically loaded with the same renderer.

```
\tl_if_empty:NT \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {
798
         \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_atsui_bool {
799
800
           \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/AAT}
801
           \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
802
             \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {/ICU}
803
804
805
806
807
808
    {
       \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_icu_bool
809
810
    }
#1 : Font name prefix (in the 5-arg case)
#2: Font name
#3: Font series
#4: Font shape
#5 : Font features
```

`ontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnnn

This macro eventually uses \DeclareFontShape to define the font shape in question.

The optional first argument is used when making the font shapes for bold, italic, and bold italic fonts using X_{\text{T}E}X's auto-recognition with #2 as /B, /I, and /BI font name suffixes. If no such font is found, it falls back to the original font name, in which case this macro doesn't proceed and the font shape is not created for the NFSS.

Next, the small caps are defined. [...] is used to define the appropriate string for activating small caps in the font, if they exist. If we are defining small caps for the upright shape, then the small caps shape default is used. For an *italic* font, however, the shape parameter is overloaded and we must call italic small caps by their own identifier. See Section 23.11 on page 100 for the code that enables this usage.

```
811 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnnn {
    \font_set:Nnn \l_tmpa_font {\fontspec_fullname:n {#1}}
                                                              {\f@size pt}
    \font_set:Nnn \l_tmpb_font {\fontspec_fullname:n {#1#2}} {\f@size pt}
    \str_if_eq:xxTF { \fontname \l_tmpa_font } { \fontname \l_tmpb_font }
    { \fontspec_info:nx {no-font-shape} {#1#2} }
815
816
    {
       fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn {#1#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}
817
    }
818
819 }
820 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn {
    \group_begin:
821
822
      \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {#1}
       \font_set:Nnn \zf@basefont {\fontspec_fullname:n {#1}} {\f@size pt}
823
      \fontspec_declare_shape:nnnn {}{#2}{#3}{#4}
824
      \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl {
825
826
         \bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_nosc_bool {
```

```
\fontspec_make_smallcaps:T {
827
             \fontspec_declare_shape:nnnn {\l_fontspec_sc_featstr_sclist} {#2}
828
829
               { \tl_if_eq:NNTF #3 \itdefault \sidefault \scdefault }
830
               { #4 \l_fontspec_fontfeat_sc_clist }
831
832
         }
833
       }{
834
         \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_fontname_tl {\l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl}
         \fontspec_declare_shape:nnnn {}{#2}
835
           { \tl_if_eq:NNTF #3 \itdefault \sidefault \scdefault }
836
           { #4 \l_fontspec_fontfeat_sc_clist }
837
838
       }
839
     \group_end:
840 }
```

Note that the test for italics to choose the \sidefault shape only works while \fontspec_select:nn passes single tokens to this macro...

\fontspec_declare_shape:nnnn

```
#1 : Raw appended font features
```

#2 : Font series

#3: Font shape

#4 : Font features

Wrapper for \DeclareFontShape.

```
841 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_declare_shape:nnnn #1#2#3#4 {
    \clist_if_empty:NTF \l_fontspec_sizefeat_clist
842
843
844
       \fontspec_get_features:n {#4}
       \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_nfss_tl {
845
         <-> \l_fontspec_scale_tl
846
847
         \fontspec_fontwrap:n {
           \fontspec_fullname:n {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl} :
848
             \l_fontspec_pre_feat_sclist \l_fontspec_rawfeatures_sclist #1
849
850
         }
851
       }
852
    }
```

Default code, above, sets things up for no optical size fonts or features. On the other hand, loop through SizeFeatures arguments, which are of the form SizeFeatures={{<one>},{<two>},{<three>}}.

```
853
    {
       \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_nfss_tl
854
855
       \clist_map_inline:Nn \l_fontspec_sizefeat_clist {
856
857
         \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_size_tl
         \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_sizedfont_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
858
859
         \fontspec_setkeys:xx {sizing} { \expandafter \use:n ##1 }
860
         \tl_if_empty:NT \l_fontspec_size_tl { \fontspec_error:n {no-size-info} }
861
         \fontspec_get_features:n{ #4 , \XKV@rm }
863
         \tl_put_right:Nx \l_fontspec_nfss_tl {
864
865
           <\l_fontspec_size_tl> \l_fontspec_scale_tl
```

And finally the actual font shape declaration using \l_fontspec_nfss_tl defined above. \l_fontspec_postadjust_tl is defined in various places to deal with things like the hyphenation character and interword spacing.

```
874 \fontspec_info:nx {defining-raw} {#2/#3}
875 \use:x{
876 \exp_not:N\DeclareFontShape{\zf@enc}{\zf@family}{#2}{#3}
877 {\l_fontspec_nfss_tl}{\l_fontspec_postadjust_tl}
878 }
```

This extra stuff for the slanted shape substitution is a little bit awkward, but I'd rather have it here than break out yet another macro. Alternatively, one day I might just redefine \slshape. Why not, eh?

\l_fontspec_pre_feat_sclist These are the features always applied to a font selection before other features.

```
887 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_pre_feat_sclist }
888
     {
889
       \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
          \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_script_tl
890
891
          {
892
            script = \l_fontspec_script_tl ;
893
            language = \l_fontspec_lang_tl
894
895
       }
896
     }
897
     {
                 = \l_fontspec_mode_tl
898
       \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_script_tl
899
900
          script = \l_fontspec_script_tl ;
901
          language = \label{language} language = \label{language}
902
903
     }
904
```

\fontspec_update_fontid:n This macro is used to build up a complex family name based on its features.

The $\langle first time \rangle$ boolean is set true in \fontspec_select:nn only the first time \f0get0feature0requests is called, so that the family name is only created once.

```
905 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_update_fontid:n {
906 \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
907 \tl_gput_right:Nx \l_fontspec_fontid_tl {#1}
908 }
909 }
```

23.9.2 Features

\fontspec_get_features:n

This macro is a wrapper for \setkeys which expands and adds a default specification to the original passed options. It begins by initialising the commands used to hold font-feature specific strings. Its argument is any additional features to prepend to the default.

```
910 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_get_features:n #1 {
911 \sclist_clear:N \l_fontspec_rawfeatures_sclist
912 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_scale_tl
913 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_opacity_tl \g_fontspec_opacity_tl
914 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_hexcol_tl \g_fontspec_hexcol_tl
915 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_postadjust_tl
916 \fontspec_setkeys:xx {options} {\l_fontspec_fontfeat_clist #1}
    \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
917
      \tl_if_empty:NF \XKV@rm {
918
919
        \fontspec_error:nx {unknown-options} { \exp_not:V \XKV@rm }
920
921
   }
```

Finish the colour specification. Do not set the colour if not explicitly spec'd else \color (using specials) will not work.

\fontspec_init:

Initialisations that either need to occur globally: (all setting of these variables is done locally inside a group)

```
928 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl
929 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl
930 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl
931 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl
932 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl
933 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl
934 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl
935 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl
936 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontfeat_up_clist
937 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bf_clist
938 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfit_clist
939 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfit_clist
940 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontfeat_sl_clist
```

```
941 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfsl_clist

942 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_fontfeat_sc_clist

943 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_script_name_tl

944 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_script_tl

945 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_lang_name_tl

946 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_lang_tl

947 \clist_clear:N \l_fontspec_sizefeat_clist

948 \tl_new:Nn \g_fontspec_hexcol_tl {000000}

949 \tl_new:Nn \g_fontspec_opacity_tl {FF^}
```

Or once per fontspec font invocation: (Some of these may be redundant. Check whether they're assigned to globally or not.)

```
950 \newcommand*\fontspec_init:{
951 \bool_set_false:N \l_fontspec_icu_bool
    \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool
952
    \xetex_or_luatex:nnn { \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_namewrap:n ##1 }
953
954
      { ##1 }
955
      { name:##1 }
956
    \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_optical_size_tl
    \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_renderer_tl
958
    \luatex_if_engine:T {
      \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_mode_tl {node}
959
       \luatexprehyphenchar = '\- % fixme
960
       \label{luatexposthyphenchar} \ = \ 0 \ \% \ fixme
961
       \luatexpreexhyphenchar = 0
962
                                    % fixme
       \luatexpostexhyphenchar= 0
963
                                     % fixme
964 }
965 }
```

\fontspec_make_smallcaps:T Th

This macro checks if the font contains small caps, and if so creates the string for accessing them in \l_fontspec_sc_featstr_sclist.

```
966 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps:T {
967
    \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_sc_featstr_sclist
    \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nT {+smcp} {
968
       \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_sc_featstr_sclist {+smcp;}
969
970
971
    }
972 }
973 \xetex_or_luatex:nn
974 {
    \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_make_smallcaps:T {
975
976
       \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
         \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps:T {#1}
977
978
         \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_atsui_bool {
979
           \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_sc_featstr_sclist
980
981
           \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nnT {3}{3} {
982
             \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_sc_featstr_sclist
983
                 {\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl;}
             #1
984
985
           }
986
         }
```

```
}
                             987
                             988
                             989 }
                             990 {
                             991
                                  \cs_set_eq:NN \fontspec_make_smallcaps:T \fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps:T
                             992 }
      \sclist_put_right:Nn I'm hardly going to write an 'sclist' module but a couple of functions are useful.
                             993 \cs_set_eq:NN \sclist_new:N \tl_new:N
                             994 \cs_set_eq:NN \sclist_clear:N \tl_clear:N
                             995 \cs_new:Npn \sclist_gput_right:Nn #1#2 {
                             996 \tl_gput_right:Nn #1 {#2;}
                             997 }
                             998 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \sclist_gput_right:Nn {Nx}
                            \l_fontspec_rawfeatures_sclist is the string used to define the list of specific
\fontspec_update_featstr:n
                             font features. Each time another font feature is requested, this macro is used to
                             add that feature to the list. Font features are separated by semicolons.
                             999 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_update_featstr:n {
                                 \bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
                            1001
                                    \sclist_gput_right:Nx \l_fontspec_rawfeatures_sclist {#1;}
                            1002
                            1003 }
                            This macro is called by each feature key selected, and runs according to which
\fontspec_make_feature:nnn
                             type of font is selected.
                            1004 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_make_feature:nnn #1#2#3 {
                            1005
                                 \xetex_or_luatex:nn
                            1006
                                    \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
                            1007
                            1008
                                      \fontspec_make_ICU_feature:n {#3}
                            1009
                                      \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_atsui_bool {
                            1010
                            1011
                                        \fontspec_make_AAT_feature:nn {#1}{#2}
                            1012
                                      }
                            1013
                                    }
                            1014
                                 }
                            1015
                                    \fontspec_make_ICU_feature:n {#3}
                            1016
                            1017
                                 }
                            1018 }
                            1019 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \fontspec_make_feature:nnn {nnx}
                            1020 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_make_AAT_feature:nn #1#2 {
                                 \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
                            1022
                                 { \fontspec_warning:n {aat-feature-not-exist} }
```

1023 1024

1025 1026

1027

1028

}

\fontspec_update_featstr:n {\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl}

\fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF {#1}{#2}

\fontspec_update_fontid:n {+#1,#2}

```
{ \fontspec_warning:nx {aat-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1,#2} }
1029
1030
     }
1031 }
1032 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_make_ICU_feature:n #1 {
1033
     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
     { \fontspec_warning:n {icu-feature-not-exist} }
1035
1036
        \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF {#1}
1037
          \fontspec_update_fontid:n {#1}
1038
          \fontspec_update_featstr:n{#1}
1039
1040
         \fontspec_warning:nx {icu-feature-not-exist-in-font} {#1} }
1041
1042
     }
1043 }
```

These macros are used in order to simplify font feature definition later on. fontspec_define_font_feature:n

```
ec_define_feature_option:nnnnn _{1044}\cs_new:Nn \fontspec_define_font_feature:n {
                    1045
                       1046 }
```

1047 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn { 1049 }

\keyval@alias@key This macro maps one xkeyval key to another.

```
1050 \newcommand*\keyval@alias@key[4][KV]{
     \cs_set_eq:cc{#1@#2@#4}{#1@#2@#3}
1052
     \cs_set_eq:cc{#1@#2@#4@default}{#1@#2@#3@default}
1053 }
```

\multi@alias@key

This macro iterates through families to map one key to another, regardless of which family it's contained within.

```
1054 \newcommand*\multi@alias@key[2]{
     \key@ifundefined[zf]{options}{#1}
1055
1056
          \key@ifundefined[zf]{preparse}{#1}
1057
1058
1059
            \key@ifundefined[zf]{preparse-external}{#1}
              { \fontspec_warning:nx {rename-feature-not-exist} {#1} }
1060
              { \keyval@alias@key[zf]{preparse-external}{#1}{#2} }
1061
1062
            \keyval@alias@key[zf]{preparse}{#1}{#2} }
1063
1064
1065
       { \keyval@alias@key[zf]{options}{#1}{#2} }
1066 }
```

c_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF

This macro takes the numerical codes for a font feature and creates a specified macro containing the string required in the font definition to turn that feature on or off. Used primarily in [...], but also used to check if small caps exists in the requested font (see page 75).

For exclusive selectors, it's easy; just grab the string: For *non*-exclusive selectors, it's a little more complex. If the selector is even, it corresponds to switching the feature on. If the selector is *odd*, it corresponds to switching the feature off. But X_{\(\text{T}\)}EX doesn't return a selector string for this number, since the feature is defined for the 'switching on' value. So we need to check the selector of the previous number, and then prefix the feature string with! to denote the switch.

Finally, save out the complete feature string in \l_fontspec_feature_string_tl.

```
1067 \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nn {TF,T,F} {
     \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpa_tl { \XeTeXfeaturename \zf@basefont #1 }
     \t! \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpa_tl
1069
1070
     { \prg_return_false: }
1071
1072
        \int_compare:nTF { \XeTeXisexclusivefeature\zf@basefont #1 > 0 }
1073
1074
          \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl {\XeTeXselectorname\zf@basefont #1\space #2}
1075
        }{
          \int_if_even:nTF {#2}
1076
1077
            \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl {\XeTeXselectorname\zf@basefont #1\space #2}
1078
1079
            tl_set:Nx \l_tmpb_tl {
1080
              \XeTeXselectorname\zf@basefont #1\space \numexpr#2-1\relax
1081
1082
1083
            \tl_if_empty:NF \l_tmpb_tl { \tl_put_left:Nn \l_tmpb_tl {!} }
1084
          }
1085
        }
1086
        \t l_if_empty:NTF \l_tmpb_tl
        { \prg_return_false: }
1087
1088
          \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_feature_string_tl { \l_tmpa_tl = \l_tmpb_tl }
1089
1090
          \prg_return_true:
1091
1092
     }
1093 }
```

\fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \fontspec_v_str_to_num:Nn This macro takes a four character string and converts it to the numerical representation required for X_{\(\)}T_{\(\)}X OpenType script/language/feature purposes. The output is stored in \l_fontspec_strnum_int.

The reason it's ugly is because the input can be of the form of any of these: 'abcd', 'abc', 'abc', 'ab', 'ab', 'etc. (It is assumed the first two chars are always not spaces.) So this macro reads in the string, delimited by a space; this input is padded with \@emptys and anything beyond four chars is snipped. The \@emptys then are used to reconstruct the spaces in the string to number calculation.

The variant \fontspec_v_str_to_num:n is used when looking at features, which are passed around with prepended plus and minus signs (e.g., +liga, -dlig); it simply strips off the first char of the input before calling the normal \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:n.

```
1094\cs_set:Npn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn #1#2 {
1095 \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2 \@empty \@empty \q_nil
1096 }
```

```
1097 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:w #1 \q_nil #2#3#4#5#6 \q_nil {
1098 \int_set:Nn #1 {
         '#2 * "1000000
1099
       + '#3 * "10000
1100
1101
       + \ifx \@empty #4 32 \else '#4 \fi * "100
1102
       + \ifx \@empty #5 32 \else '#5 \fi
1103 }
1104 }
1105 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn {No}
1106 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_v_str_to_num:Nn #1#2 {
     \bool_if:nTF
1107
1108
1109
          tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p:nN {#2} {+} ||
1110
          \tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p:nN {#2} {-}
1111
       { \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:No #1 { \use_none:n #2 } }
1112
1113
       { \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn #1 {#2} }
1114 }
```

\fontspec_check_script:nTF

This macro takes an OpenType script tag and checks if it exists in the current font. The output boolean is \@tempswatrue. \l_fontspec_strnum_int is used to store the number corresponding to the script tag string.

```
1115 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn {\prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_check_script:n {TF}}
1116 {
1117
       \fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}
1118
       \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int { \XeTeXOTcountscripts\zf@basefont }
       \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
1119
       \@tempswafalse
1120
       \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1121
1122
1123
          \ifnum \XeTeXOTscripttag\zf@basefont \l_tmpa_int = \l_fontspec_strnum_int
1124
            \@tempswatrue
1125
            \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
1126
1127
            \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
1128
          \fi
1129
       }
       \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
1130
1131
     }
1132
       \directlua{fontspec.check_ot_script("zf@basefont", "#1")}
1133
1134
       \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
```

\fontspec_check_lang:nTF

This macro takes an OpenType language tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script. The output boolean is \@tempswatrue. \l_fontspec_strnum_int is used to store the number corresponding to the language tag string. The script used is whatever's held in \l_fontspec_script_int. By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'.

```
1136 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn {\prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_check_lang:n {TF}}}
1137 {
```

```
\verb|\fontspec_iv_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int {#1}|
1138
1139
       \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int {
1140
         \XeTeXOTcountlanguages \zf@basefont \l_fontspec_script_int
1141
1142
       \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
1143
       \@tempswafalse
1144
       \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1145
         \ifnum\XeTeXOTlanguagetag\zf@basefont\l_fontspec_script_int \l_tmpa_int =\l_fontspec_strnum_
1146
           \@tempswatrue
1147
           1148
1149
1150
           \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
1151
1152
       \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
1153
1154
     }
1155
     {
       \directlua{
1156
         fontspec.check_ot_lang( "zf@basefont", "#1", "\l_fontspec_script_tl" )
1157
1158
1159
       \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
1160
```

\fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF \fontspec_check_ot_feat:nT This macro takes an OpenType feature tag and checks if it exists in the current font/script/language. The output boolean is \@tempswa. \l_fontspec_strnum_int is used to store the number corresponding to the feature tag string. The script used is whatever's held in \l_fontspec_script_int. By default, that's the number corresponding to 'latn'. The language used is \l_fontspec_language_int, by default 0, the 'default language'.

```
1161 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn
      { \prg_new_conditional:Nnn \fontspec_check_ot_feat:n {TF,T} }
1162
1163
1164
       \int_set:Nn \l_tmpb_int {
1165
          \XeTeXOTcountfeatures \zf@basefont
1166
                                 \label{local_local_local_local_local} $$ l_fontspec_script_int $$
1167
                                 \l_fontspec_language_int
1168
        \label{lem:normalized} $$ \fontspec_v_str_to_num:Nn \l_fontspec_strnum_int $$\{\#1$} $$
1169
1170
        \int_zero:N \l_tmpa_int
1171
        \@tempswafalse
        \bool_until_do:nn { \int_compare_p:nNn \l_tmpa_int = \l_tmpb_int }
1172
1173
          1174
               \l_tmpa_int =\l_fontspec_strnum_int
1175
            \@tempswatrue
1176
1177
            \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int {\l_tmpb_int}
1178
          \else
1179
            \int_incr:N \l_tmpa_int
1180
          \fi
1181
       }
```

```
\if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
1182
1183
     }
1184
1185
        \directlua{
1186
          fontspec.check_ot_feat(
1187
                                   "zf@basefont", "#1",
                                   "\l_fontspec_lang_tl", "\l_fontspec_script_tl"
1188
1189
1190
1191
        \if@tempswa \prg_return_true: \else: \prg_return_false: \fi:
1192
    }
```

23.10 keyval definitions

This is the tedious section where we correlate all possible (eventually) font feature requests with their X_HT_EX representations.

23.10.1 Pre-parsing naming information

These features are extracted from the font feature list before all others, using xkeyval's \setkeys*.

ExternalLocation For fonts that aren't installed in the system. If no argument is given, the font is located with kpsewhich; it's either in the current directory or the TEX tree. Otherwise, the argument given defines the file path of the font.

```
1193 \bool_new:N \l_fontspec_external_bool
1194 \define@key[zf]{preparse-external}{ExternalLocation}[]{
    \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_nobf_bool
     \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_noit_bool
     \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_external_bool
1197
     \xetex_or_luatex:nnn { \cs_gset:Npn \fontspec_namewrap:n ##1 }
1198
            [ #1 ##1 ] }
1199
       { file: #1 ##1
1200
     \xetex_if_engine:T { \setkeys[zf]{preparse}{Renderer=ICU} }
1201
1202 }
1203 \aliasfontfeature{ExternalLocation}{Path}
```

Extension For fonts that aren't installed in the system. Specifies the font extension to use.

```
1204 \define@key[zf]{preparse-external}{Extension}{
1205 \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_extension_tl {#1}
1206 \bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_external_bool {
1207 \setkeys*[zf]{preparse-external}{ExternalLocation}
1208 }
1209 }
1210 \tl_clear:N \l_fontspec_extension_tl
```

23.10.2 Pre-parsed features

After the font name(s) have been sorted out, now need to extract any renderer/font configuration features that need to be processed before all other font features.

Renderer This feature must be processed before all others (the other font shape and features options are also pre-parsed for convenience) because the renderer determines the format of the features and even whether certain features are available.

```
1211 \define@choicekey[zf]{preparse}{Renderer}[\l_tmpa_tl\l_tmpa_num]
       {AAT,ICU,Graphite,Full,Basic}{
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+rend:#1}
     \int_compare:nTF {\l_tmpa_num < 3} {</pre>
       \xetex_or_luatex:nn
1215
1216
       {
          \tl_set:Nv \l_fontspec_renderer_tl {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_\l_tmpa_tl}
1217
1218
       }
1219
          \fontspec_warning:nx {only-xetex-feature} {Renderer=AAT/ICU/Graphite}
1220
1221
1222
     }{
1223
       \xetex_or_luatex:nn
1224
       { \fontspec_warning:nx {only-luatex-feature} {Renderer=Full/Basic} }
1225
       { \tl_set:Nv \l_fontspec_mode_tl {g_fontspec_mode_tag_\l_tmpa_tl} }
1226 }
1227 }
1228 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_AAT} {/AAT}
1229 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_ICU} {/ICU}
1230 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_renderer_tag_Graphite} {/GR}
1231 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_mode_tag_Full} {node}
1232 \tl_set:cn {g_fontspec_mode_tag_Basic} {base}
```

OpenType script/language See later for the resolutions from fontspec features to OpenType definitions.

```
1233 \define@key[zf]{preparse}{Script}{
1234  \xetex_if_engine:T { \setkeys[zf]{preparse}{Renderer=ICU} }
1235  \t1_set:Nn \l_fontspec_script_name_tl {#1}
1236  \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+script:#1}
1237 }

Exactly the same:
1238 \define@key[zf]{preparse}{Language}{
1239  \xetex_if_engine:T { \setkeys[zf]{preparse}{Renderer=ICU} }
1240  \t1_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_name_tl {#1}
1241  \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+language:#1}
1242 }
```

23.10.3 Bold/italic choosing options

The Bold, Italic, and BoldItalic features are for defining explicitly the bold and italic fonts used in a font family.

```
Fonts Upright:
1243 \define@key[zf]{preparse-external}{UprightFont}{
1244 \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl {#1}
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {up:#1}
1246 }
 Bold:
1247 \define@key[zf]{preparse-external}{BoldFont}{
1248 \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
1249
1250
        \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_nobf_bool
1251
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {nobf}
1252
     }
1253
       \bool_set_false:N \l_fontspec_nobf_bool
1254
       \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl {#1}
1255
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {bf:#1}
1256
1257 }
1258 }
 Same for italic:
1259 \define@key[zf]{preparse-external}{ItalicFont}{
    \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
1260
1261
        \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_noit_bool
1262
1263
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {noit}
1264
     }{
1265
       \bool_set_false:N \l_fontspec_noit_bool
1266
       \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl {#1}
1267
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {it:#1}
1268 }
1269 }
 Simpler for bold+italic & slanted:
1270 \define@key[zf]{preparse-external}{BoldItalicFont}{
     \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl {#1}
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {bfit:#1}
1272
1273 }
1274 \define@key[zf]{preparse-external}{SlantedFont}{
     \verb|\fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl $\{\#1\}$|
1276
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {sl:#1}
1277 }
1278 \define@key[zf]{preparse-external}{BoldSlantedFont}{
     \fontspec_complete_fontname: Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl {#1}
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {bfsl:#1}
1280
1281 }
 Small caps isn't pre-parsed because it can vary with others above:
1282 \define@key[zf]{options}{SmallCapsFont}{
1283
     \tl_if_empty:nTF {#1}
1284
     {
1285
        \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_nosc_bool
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {nosc}
1286
```

```
1287      }{
1288      \bool_set_true:N \l_fontspec_nosc_bool
1289      \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl {#1}
1290      \fontspec_update_fontid:n {sc:\zap@space #1~\@empty}
1291      }
1292 }
```

\fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn

This macro defines #1 as the input with any * tokens of its input replaced by the font name. This lets us define supplementary fonts in full ("Baskerville Semibold") or in abbreviation ("* Semibold").

```
1293 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn #1#2 {
1294 \tl_set:Nn #1 {#2}
1295 \tl_replace_all_in:Nnx #1 {*} {\l_fontspec_fontname_tl}
1296 \luatex_if_engine:T {
1297 \tl_replace_all_in:Nnn #1 {^} {}
1298 }
1299 }
1300 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_replace_all_in:Nnn {Nnx}
```

Features

```
1301 \define@key[zf]{preparse}{UprightFeatures}{
     \def\l_fontspec_fontfeat_up_clist{, #1}
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {rmfeat:#1}
1303
1304 }
1305 \define@key[zf]{preparse}{BoldFeatures}{
     \def\l_fontspec_fontfeat_bf_clist{, #1}
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {bffeat:#1}
1307
1308 }
1309 \define@key[zf]{preparse}{ItalicFeatures}{
     \def\l_fontspec_fontfeat_it_clist{, #1}
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {itfeat:#1}
1311
1312 }
1313 \define@key[zf]{preparse}{BoldItalicFeatures}{
     \def\l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfit_clist{, #1}
1315
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {bfitfeat:#1}
1316 }
1317 \define@key[zf]{preparse}{SlantedFeatures}{
     \def\l_fontspec_fontfeat_sl_clist{, #1}
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {slfeat:#1}
1319
1320 }
1321 \define@key[zf]{preparse}{BoldSlantedFeatures}{
     \def\l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfsl_clist{, #1}
1323
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {bfslfeat:#1}
1324 }
```

Note that small caps features can vary by shape, so these in fact *aren't* pre-parsed.

```
1325 \define@key[zf]{options}{SmallCapsFeatures}{
1326  \bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
1327   \def\l_fontspec_fontfeat_sc_clist{, #1}
1328  }
1329  \fontspec_update_fontid:n {scfeat:\zap@space #1~\@empty}
```

1330 }

paragraphFeatures varying by size TODO: sizezfeatures and italicfont (etc) don't play nice

```
1331 \define@key[zf]{preparse}{SizeFeatures}{
1332  \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_sizefeat_clist {#1}
1333  \fontspec_update_fontid:n {sizefeat:\zap@space #1~\@empty}
1334 }
1335 \define@key[zf]{sizing}{Size}{ \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_size_tl {#1} }
1336 \define@key[zf]{sizing}{Font}{
1337  \fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn \l_fontspec_sizedfont_tl {#1}
1338 }
```

23.10.4 Font-independent features

These features can be applied to any font.

Scale If the input isn't one of the pre-defined string options, then it's gotta be numerical. \fontspec_calc_scale:n does all the work in the auto-scaling cases.

```
1339 \define@key[zf]{options}{Scale}{
     \prg_case_str:nnn {#1}
1341
     {
1342
       {MatchLowercase} { \fontspec_calc_scale:n {5} }
1343
       {MatchUppercase} { \fontspec_calc_scale:n {8} }
1344 }
     { \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_scale_tl {#1} }
1345
1346
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+scale:\l_fontspec_scale_tl}
1347
     \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_scale_tl { s*[\l_fontspec_scale_tl] }
1348 }
```

\fontspec_calc_scale:n

This macro calculates the amount of scaling between the default roman font and the (default shape of) the font being selected such that the font dimension that is input is equal for both. The only font dimensions that justify this are 5 (lowercase height) and 8 (uppercase height in X-TEX).

This script is executed for every extra shape, which seems wasteful, but allows alternate italic shapes from a separate font, say, to be loaded and to be auto-scaled correctly. Even if this would be ugly.

```
1349 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_calc_scale:n #1 {
1350 \group_begin:
1351
       \rmfamily
       \fontspec_set_font_dimen:NnN \@tempdima {#1} \font
1352
1353
        \fontspec_set_font_dimen:NnN \@tempdimb {#1} \zf@basefont
        \dim_set:Nn \@tempdimc { 1pt*\@tempdima/\@tempdimb }
1354
1355
       \tl_gset:Nx \l_fontspec_scale_tl {\strip@pt\@tempdimc}
       \fontspec_info:n {set-scale}
1356
     \group_end:
1357
1358 }
```

\fontspec_set_font_dimen:NnN

This function sets the dimension #1 (for font #3) to 'fontdimen' #2 for either font dimension 5 (x-height) or 8 (cap-height). If, for some reason, these return an

incorrect 'zero' value (as \fontdimen8 might for a .tfm font), then we cheat and measure the height of a glyph. We assume in this case that the font contains either an 'X' or an 'x'.

```
1359 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_set_font_dimen:NnN #1#2#3
1360 {
1361
      \dim_set:Nn #1 { \fontdimen #2 #3 }
1362
      \dim_{compare:nNnT} #1 = {0pt} {
        \settoheight #1 {
1363
          \str_if_eq:nnTF {#3} {\font} \rmfamily #3
1364
          \prg_case_int:nnn #2 {
1365
            \{5\} \{x\} % x-height
1366
            {8} {X} % cap-height
1367
1368
          } {?} % "else" clause; never reached.
1369
        }
1370
      }
1371 }
```

Inter-word space These options set the relevant \fontdimens for the font being loaded.

```
1372 \define@key[zf]{options}{WordSpace}{
1373  \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+wordspace:#1}
1374  \bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
1375   \_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w #1,,,\q_stop
1376 }
1377 }
```

\zf@wordspace@parse

This macro determines if the input to WordSpace is of the form $\{X\}$ or $\{X,Y,Z\}$ and executes the font scaling. If the former input, it executes $\{X,X,X\}$.

```
1378 \cs_set:Npn \_fontspec_parse_wordspace:w #1,#2,#3,#4 \q_stop {
1379
    \tl_if_empty:nTF {#4}
1380
1381
      \dim_set:Nn \@tempdima {#1\fontdimen2\zf@basefont}
1382
      \dim_set:Nn \@tempdimb {\@tempdima}
1383
      \dim_set:Nn \@tempdimc {\@tempdima}
1384
    }{
      \dim_set:Nn \@tempdima {#1\fontdimen2\zf@basefont}
1385
      1386
      1387
1388
1389
    \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_postadjust_tl {
1390
      \l_fontspec_postadjust_tl
      \fontdimen2\font\the\@tempdima
1391
      \fontdimen3\font\the\@tempdimb
1392
      \fontdimen4\font\the\@tempdimc
1393
1394 }
1395 }
```

Punctuation space Scaling factor for the nominal \fontdimen#7.

```
1396 \define@key[zf]{options}{PunctuationSpace}{
1397 \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+punctspace:#1}
```

```
1398 \setlength\@tempdima{#1\fontdimen7\zf@basefont} 
1399 \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_postadjust_tl {\clustright} {\
```

Letterspacing

```
1401 \define@key[zf]{options}{LetterSpace}{
1402 \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+tracking:#1}
1403 \fontspec_update_featstr:n{letterspace=#1}
1404}
```

Hyphenation character This feature takes one of three arguments: 'None', $\langle glyph \rangle$, or $\langle slot \rangle$. If the input isn't the first, and it's one character, then it's the second; otherwise, it's the third.

```
1405 \define@key[zf]{options}{HyphenChar}{
                                                    \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+hyphenchar:#1}
                                                    \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {None}
1407
1408
                                                 {
1409
                                                                       \tl_put_right:Nn \l_fontspec_postadjust_tl { \hyphenchar \font = \c_minus_one }
1410
                                                  }
1411
1412
                                                                        \tl_if_single:nTF {#1}
                                                                                          { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl { '#1} }
1413
                                                                                        { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl { #1} }
1414
                                                                       \font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF \zf@basefont {\l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl}
1415
1416
                                                                                           \xetex_or_luatex:nnn { \tl_put_right:Nn \l_fontspec_postadjust_tl }
1417
                                                                                                             { \hyphenchar \font = \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl \scan_stop: }
1418
1419
 1420
                                                                                                                                 \displaystyle \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \begin{array}{ll} \\ \\ \end{array} & \begin{array}{ll} \\ \end{array} & 
 1421
                                                                                                                                 \luatexprehyphenchar = \l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl \scan_stop:
 1422
1423
                                                                       }
1424
                                                                       {
                                                                                      \fontspec_error:nx {no-glyph}{#1} }
1425
                                                  }
1426 }
```

Color

```
1427 \define@key[zf]{options}{Color}{
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+col:#1}
     \cs_if_exist:cTF {\token_to_str:N\color@#1}
1429
1430
     {
        \verb|\convertcolorspec{named}{#1}{HTML}\\l\_fontspec\_hexcol\_tl|
1431
     }
1432
1433
        \int_compare:nTF { \tl_elt_count:n {#1} == 6 }
1434
1435
        { \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_hexcol_tl {#1} }
1436
          \int_compare:nTF { \tl_elt_count:n {#1} == 8 }
1437
          { \fontspec_parse_colour:viii #1 }
1438
1439
          {
```

```
\bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
1440
1441
              \fontspec_warning:nx {bad-colour} {#1}
1442
1443
1444
        }
1445
     }
1446 }
1447 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_parse_colour:viii #1#2#3#4#5#6#7#8 {
      \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_hexcol_tl {#1#2#3#4#5#6}
      \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_fontspec_opacity_tl \g_fontspec_opacity_tl
1449
1450
        \bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
1451
1452
          \fontspec_warning:nx {opa-twice-col} {#7#8}
1453
        }
1454
      }
      \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_opacity_tl {#7#8}
1455
1456 }
1457 \keyval@alias@key[zf]{options}{Color}{Colour}
1458 \newcounter{fontspec_tmp_int}
1459 \define@key[zf]{options}{Opacity}{
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+opac:#1}
1460
      \setcounter {fontspec_tmp_int} { 255*\real{#1} }
1461
      \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_fontspec_opacity_tl \g_fontspec_opacity_tl
1462
1463
        \bool_if:NF \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
1464
1465
          \fontspec_warning:nx {opa-twice} {#1}
1466
1467
      \tl_set:Nx \l_fontspec_opacity_tl
1468
      { \nhex2 { \value{fontspec_tmp_int} } }
1469
1470 }
 Mapping
1471 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn {
     \define@key[zf]{options}{Mapping}
1472
1473 }{
     \verb| fontspec_update_fontid:n {+map:#1}| \\
1474
     \fontspec_update_featstr:n{mapping=#1}
1475
1476 }{
1477
      \str_if_eq:nnTF {#1} {tex-text} {
1478
        \fontspec_warning:n {no-mapping-ligtex}
        \msg_redirect_name:nnn {fontspec} {no-mapping-ligtex} {none}
        \setkeys[zf]{options}{ Ligatures=TeX }
1480
1481
     }{
1482
        \verb|\fontspec_warning:n {no-mapping}|
1483
     }
1484 }
```

FeatureFile

 $1485 \ensuremath{\mbox{\sc heatureFile}} \{ ensuremath{\mbox{\sc heatureFile}} \} \{ ensuremath{\$

```
1486 \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+fea:#1}
1487 \fontspec_update_featstr:n{featurefile=#1}
1488 }
```

23.10.5 Continuous font axes

```
1489 \define@key[zf]{options}{Weight}{
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+weight:#1}
     \fontspec_update_featstr:n{weight=#1}
1492 }
1493 \define@key[zf]{options}{Width}{
     \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+width:#1}
     \fontspec_update_featstr:n{width=#1}
1495
1496 }
1497 \define@key[zf]{options}{OpticalSize}{
1498
     \xetex_or_luatex:nn {
1499
       \bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
1500
          \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
          \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+size:#1}
1501
1502
          \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_mm_bool {
1503
1504
            \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+size:#1}
            \fontspec_update_featstr:n{optical size=#1}
1505
          }
1506
1507
        \bool_if:nT { !\l_fontspec_icu_bool && !\l_fontspec_mm_bool }{
1508
          \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
1509
1510
            \fontspec_warning:n {no-opticals}
1511
          }
1512
       }
1513
     }{
1514
        \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_optical_size_tl {/ S = #1}
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+size:#1}
1515
1516
     }
1517 }
```

23.10.6 Font transformations

These are to be specified to apply directly to a font shape:

```
1518 \define@key[zf]{options}{FakeSlant}[0.2]{
1519  \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+slant:#1}
1520  \fontspec_update_featstr:n{slant=#1}
1521 }
1522 \define@key[zf]{options}{FakeStretch}[1.2]{
1523  \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+extend:#1}
1524  \fontspec_update_featstr:n{extend=#1}
1525 }
1526 \define@key[zf]{options}{FakeBold}[1.5]{
1527  \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+embolden:#1}
1528  \fontspec_update_featstr:n{embolden=#1}
```

These are to be given to a shape that has no real bold/italic to signal that fontspec should automatically create 'fake' shapes.

The behaviour is currently that only if both AutoFakeSlant *and* AutoFakeBold are specified, the bold italic is also faked.

These features presently *override* real shapes found in the font; in the future I'd like these features to be ignored in this case, instead. (This is just a bit harder to program in the current design of fontspec.)

```
1530 \define@key[zf]{options}{AutoFakeSlant}[0.2]{
     \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
        \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl {#1}
1532
1533
        \clist_put_right:Nn \l_fontspec_fontfeat_it_clist {,FakeSlant=#1}
1534
        \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
1535
        \fontspec_update_fontid:n {fakeit:#1}
1536
        \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl {
          \tl_put_right:Nx \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfit_clist
1537
            {,FakeBold=\l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl,FakeSlant=#1}
1538
1539
          \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
1540
       }
1541
     }
1542 }
 Same but reversed:
1543 \define@key[zf]{options}{AutoFakeBold}[1.5]{
     \bool_if:NT \l_fontspec_firsttime_bool {
        \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl {#1}
1545
        \tl_put_right:Nn \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bf_clist {,FakeBold=#1}
1546
1547
        \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
1548
        \fontspec_update_fontid:n {fakebf:#1}
1549
        \tl_if_empty:NF \l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl {
1550
          \tl_put_right:Nx \l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfit_clist
            {,FakeSlant=\l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl,FakeBold=#1}
1551
          \tl_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl \l_fontspec_fontname_tl
1552
1553
       }
1554
     }
1555 }
```

23.10.7 Ligatures

The call to the nested keyval family must be wrapped in braces to hide the parent list (this later requires the use of global definitions (\xdef) in [...]). Both AAT and OpenType names are offered to chose Rare/Discretionary ligatures.

```
1556 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{Ligatures}
1557 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Required}
                                                                      {1}{0}{+rlig}
1558 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRequired}
                                                                      {1}{1}{-rlig}
1559 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Common}
                                                                      {1}{2}{+liga}
1560 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoCommon}
                                                                      {1}{3}{-liga}
1561 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Rare}
                                                                      {1}{4}{+dlig}
1562 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRare}
                                                                      {1}{5}{-dlig}
1563 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Discretionary} {1}{4}{+dlig}
1564 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoDiscretionary}{1}{5}{-dlig}
1565 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Contextual}
                                                                      {}{} {+clig}
```

```
1566 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoContextual}
                                                                      {}{} {-clig}
1567 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Historic}
                                                                      {}{} {+hlig}
1568 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoHistoric}
                                                                      {}{} {-hlig}
1569 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Logos}
                                                                      {1}{6} {}
1570 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoLogos}
                                                                      {1}{7} {}
1571 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Rebus}
                                                                      {1}{8} {}
1572 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoRebus}
                                                                      {1}{9} {}
1573 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Diphthong}
                                                                      {1}{10}{}
1574 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoDiphthong}
                                                                      {1}{11}{}
1575 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Squared}
                                                                      {1}{12}{}
1576 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoSquared}
                                                                      {1}{13}{}
1577 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{AbbrevSquared} {1}{14}{}
1578\fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoAbbrevSquared}{1}{15}{}
1579 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{Icelandic}
                                                                      {1}{32}{}
1580 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Ligatures}{NoIcelandic}
                                                                      {1}{33}{}
```

Emulate CM extra ligatures.

```
1581 \define@key[zf@feat]{Ligatures}{TeX}[]{
1582
     \xetex_or_luatex:nn {
1583
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+map:tex-text}
1584
        \fontspec_update_featstr:n{mapping=tex-text}
1585
     }{
1586
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+tlig+trep}
1587
       \fontspec_update_featstr:n{+tlig;+trep}
1588
     }
1589 }
```

23.10.8 Letters

```
1590 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{Letters}
1591 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{Normal}
                                                                        {3}{0}{}
1592 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{Uppercase}
                                                                        {3}{1}{+case}
1593 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{Lowercase}
                                                                        {3}{2}{}
1594 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{SmallCaps}
                                                                        {3}{3}{+smcp}
1595 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{PetiteCaps}
                                                                        {} {} {+pcap}
1596 \land fontspec\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn\{Letters\} \{UppercaseSmallCaps\} \ \{\} \ \{+c2sc\} \}
1597 \land percase Petite Caps \} \{\} \ \{\} \ \{+c2pc\} \} \}
1598 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{InitialCaps}
                                                                        {3}{4}{}
1599 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Letters}{Unicase}
                                                                        {} {} {+unic}
```

23.10.9 Numbers

These were originally separated into NumberCase and NumberSpacing following AAT, but it makes more sense to combine them.

Both naming conventions are offered to select the number case.

```
1600 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{Numbers}
1601 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Numbers}{Monospaced} {6} {0}{+tnum}
1602 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Numbers}{Proportional} {6} {1}{+pnum}
1603 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Numbers}{Lowercase} {21}{0}{+onum}
1604 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Numbers}{OldStyle} {21}{0}{+onum}
1605 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Numbers}{Uppercase} {21}{1}{+lnum}
1606 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Numbers}{Lining} {21}{1}{+lnum}
```

luaotload provides a custom anum feature for replacing Latin (AKA Arabic) numbers with Arabic (AKA Indic-Arabic). The same feature maps to Farsi (Persian) numbers if font language is Farsi.

```
1609 \luatex_if_engine:T {
1610 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Numbers}{Arabic}{}{}{+anum}
1611 }
```

23.10.10 Contextuals

```
1612 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n {Contextuals}
1613 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{Swash}
                                                                        {} {} {+cswh}
                                                                        {} {} {-cswh}
1614 \verb|\fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoSwash}|
1615 \verb| fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{Alternate}|
                                                                        {} {} {+calt}
1616 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoAlternate} {} {} {} {-calt}
1617 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{WordInitial}
                                                                        {8}{0}{+init}
1618 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoWordInitial}{8}{1}{-init}
1619 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{WordFinal}
                                                                        {8}{2}{+fina}
1620 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoWordFinal}
                                                                        {8}{3}{-fina}
1621 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{LineInitial}
                                                                        {8}{4}{}
1622 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoLineInitial}{8}{5}{}
1623 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{LineFinal}
                                                                        {8}{6}{+falt}
1624 \verb|\fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{ NoLineFinal}|
                                                                        {8}{7}{-falt}
1625 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{Inner}
                                                                        {8}{8}{+medi}
1626 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Contextuals}{NoInner}
                                                                        \{8\}\{9\}\{-medi\}
```

23.10.11 Diacritics

```
1627 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{Diacritics}
1628 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{Show}
                                                                     {9}{0}{}
1629 \verb| fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{Hide}|
                                                                     {9}{1}{}
1630 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{Decompose}
                                                                     {9}{2}{}
1631 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{MarkToBase} {}{}{+mark}
1632 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoMarkToBase}{}{}{-mark}
1633 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{MarkToMark} {}{}{+mkmk}
1634 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoMarkToMark}{}{}{-mkmk}
1635 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{AboveBase}
                                                                    {}{}{+abvm}
1636 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoAboveBase} {}{}{-abvm}
1637 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{BelowBase}
                                                                    {}{}{+blwm}
1638 \verb|\fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Diacritics}{NoBelowBase} | \{\}\{-blwm\}\}|
```

23.10.12 Kerning

```
1639 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{Kerning}
1640 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}{Uppercase}{}{}{+cpsp}
1641 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}{On} {}{}{+kern}
1642 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}{Off} {}{}{-kern}
1643 %\fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}{Vertical}{}{}{+vkrn}
1644 %\fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}
1645 % {VerticalAlternateProportional}{}{}{+vpal}
1646 %\fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Kerning}{VerticalAlternateHalfWidth}{}{}{+vhal}
```

23.10.13 Vertical position

```
1647 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{VerticalPosition}
1648 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{VerticalPosition}{Normal} \{10\{0\}\{\}
1649 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{VerticalPosition}\{Superior\} \{10\{1\}\{+sups\}
1650 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnnn{VerticalPosition}\{Inferior\} \{10\{2\}\{+subs\}
1651 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnnn{VerticalPosition}\{Ordinal\} \{10\{3\}\{+ordn\}
1652 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnnn{VerticalPosition}\{Numerator\} \{\} \{+numr\}
1653 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{VerticalPosition}\{Denominator\}\{\} \{+dnom\}
1654 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{VerticalPosition}\{ScientificInferior\}\{\}\{+sinf\}
```

23.10.14 Fractions

23.10.15 Alternates and variants

Selected numerically because they don't have standard names. Very easy to process, very annoying for the user!

```
1660 \define@key[zf]{options}{Alternate}[0]{
     \clist_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_tmpa_clist \XKV@rm
1661
1662
     \setkeys*[zf@feat]{Alternate}{#1}
     \tl_if_empty:NF \XKV@rm {
1663
       \def\XKV@tfam{Alternate}
1664
       \fontspec_make_feature:nnx {17}{#1} { \fontspec_salt:n {#1} }
1665
1666
     \clist_set_eq:NN \XKV@rm \l_fontspec_tmpa_clist
1667
1668 }
1669 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn { \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_salt:n #1 }
1670 {+salt=#1} { +salt= \int_eval:n {#1+1} }
1671 \define@key[zf]{options}{Variant}{
     \clist_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_tmpa_clist \XKV@rm
1673
     \setkeys*[zf@feat]{Variant}{#1}
     \tl_if_empty:NF \XKV@rm {
1674
       \def\XKV@tfam{Variant}
1675
       1676
    }
1677
1678
     \clist_set_eq:NN \XKV@rm \l_fontspec_tmpa_clist
1679 }
1680 \aliasfontfeature{Variant}{StylisticSet}
1681 \define@key[zf]{options}{CharacterVariant}{
     \clist_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_tmpa_clist \XKV@rm
     \setkeys*[zf@feat]{CharacterVariant}{#1}
1683
     \tl_if_empty:NF \XKV@rm {
1684
       \def\XKV@tfam{CharacterVariant}
1685
       \fontspec_make_feature:nnx {}{} { +cv \two@digits {#1} }
1686
1687
     \clist_set_eq:NN \XKV@rm \l_fontspec_tmpa_clist
1688
1689 }
```

23.10.16 Style

```
1690 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{Style}
1691 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Alternate}
                                                                   {} {} {+salt}
1692 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Italic}
                                                                   {32}{2}{+ital}
1693 \verb|\fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Ruby}|
                                                                   {28}{2}{+ruby}
1694 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Swash}
                                                                   {} {} {+swsh}
1695 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Historic}
                                                                   {} {} {+hist}
1696 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Display}
                                                                   {19}{1}{}
1697 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{Engraved}
                                                                   {19}{2}{}
1698 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{TitlingCaps}
                                                                  {19}{4}{+titl}
1699 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{TallCaps}
                                                                  {19}{5}{}
1700 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Style}{HorizontalKana}{} {} {} {+hkna}
1701 \fontspec\_define\_feature\_option:nnnnn{Style}{VerticalKana} \ \ \{\} \ \ \{+vkna\}
```

23.10.17 CJK shape

```
1702 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{CJKShape}
1703 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{Traditional}{20}{0} { +trad}
1704 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{Simplified} {20}{1} { +smpl}
1705 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1978} {20}{2} { +jp78}
1706 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1983} {20}{3} { +jp83}
1707 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{JIS1990} {20}{4} { +jp90}
1708 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{Expert} {20}{10}{+expt}
1709 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CJKShape}{NLC} {20}{13}{+nlck}
```

23.10.18 Character width

```
1710 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{CharacterWidth}
1711 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Proportional}{22}{0}{+pwid}
1712 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Full}{22}{1}{+fwid}
1713 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Half}{22}{2}{+hwid}
1714 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Third}{22}{3}{+twid}
1715 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Quarter}{22}{4}{+qwid}
1716 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{AlternateProportional}{22}{5}{+palt}
1717 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{AlternateHalf}{22}{6}{+halt}
1718 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{CharacterWidth}{Default}{22}{7}{}}
```

23.10.19 Annotation

```
1719 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{0ff}{24}{0}{\}
1720 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{Box}{24}{1}{\}
1721 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{RoundedBox}{24}{2}{\}
1722 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{Circle}{24}{3}{\}
1723 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackCircle}{24}{4}{\}
1724 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{Parenthesis}{24}{5}{\}
1725 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{Period}{24}{6}{\}
1726 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{RomanNumerals}{24}{7}{\}
1727 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{Diamond}{24}{8}{\}
1728 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackSquare}{24}{9}{\}
1729 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{BlackRoundSquare}{24}{10}{\}
1730 \fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn{Annotation}{DoubleCircle}{24}{11}{\}
1731 \define@key[zf]{options}{Annotation}[0]{
1732 \clist_set_eq:NN \l_fontspec_tmpa_clist \XKV@rm
```

```
\setkeys*[zf@feat]{Annotation}{#1}
1733
1734
     \tl_if_empty:NF \XKV@rm {
1735
       \def\XKV@tfam{Alternate}
1736
       \fontspec_make_feature:nnx {}{} { \fontspec_nalt:n {#1} }
1737
1738
     \clist_set_eq:NN \XKV@rm \l_fontspec_tmpa_clist
1739 }
1740 \xetex_or_luatex:nnn { \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_nalt:n #1 }
1741 {+nalt=#1} { +nalt= \int_eval:n {#1+1} }
 23.10.20 Vertical
1742 \fontspec_define_font_feature:n{Vertical}
\bool_if:NTF \l_fontspec_icu_bool {
       \fontspec_make_feature:nnn{}{}{+vrt2}
1745
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+vert}
1746
       \fontspec_update_featstr:n{vertical}
1747
1748
     }{
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+vert}
1749
1750
       \fontspec_update_featstr:n{vertical}
1751
1752 }
 23.10.21 Script
1753 \newfontscript{Arabic}{arab}
                                            \newfontscript{Armenian}{armn}
1754 \newfontscript{Balinese}{bali}
                                            \newfontscript{Bengali}{beng}
1755 \newfontscript{Bopomofo}{bopo}
                                            \newfontscript{Braille}{brai}
1756 \newfontscript{Buginese}{bugi}
                                            \newfontscript{Buhid}{buhd}
1757 \newfontscript{Byzantine~Music}{byzm} \newfontscript{Canadian~Syllabics}{cans}
1758 \newfontscript{Cherokee}{cher}
1759 \newfontscript{CJK~Ideographic}{hani}
                                            \newfontscript{Coptic}{copt}
1760 \newfontscript{Cypriot~Syllabary}{cprt} \newfontscript{Cyrillic}{cyrl}
1761 \newfontscript{Default}{DFLT}
                                            \newfontscript{Deseret}{dsrt}
1762 \newfontscript{Devanagari}{deva}
                                            \newfontscript{Ethiopic}{ethi}
                                            \newfontscript{Glagolitic}{glag}
1763 \newfontscript{Georgian}{geor}
1764 \newfontscript{Gothic}{goth}
                                            \newfontscript{Greek}{grek}
1765 \newfontscript{Gujarati}{gujr}
                                            \newfontscript{Gurmukhi}{guru}
1766 \newfontscript{Hangul~Jamo}{jamo}
                                            \newfontscript{Hangul}{hang}
1767 \newfontscript{Hanunoo}{hano}
                                            \newfontscript{Hebrew}{hebr}
1768 \newfontscript{Hiragana~and~Katakana}{kana}
1769 \newfontscript{Javanese}{java}
                                            \newfontscript{Kannada}{knda}
1770 \newfontscript{Kharosthi}{khar}
                                            \newfontscript{Khmer}{khmr}
1771 \newfontscript{Lao}{lao^}
                                            \newfontscript{Latin}{latn}
1772 \newfontscript{Limbu}{limb}
                                            \newfontscript{Linear~B}{linb}
1773 \newfontscript{Malayalam}{mlym}
                                            \newfontscript{Math}{math}
1774 \newfontscript{Mongolian}{mong}
1775 \newfontscript{Musical~Symbols}{musc}
                                            \newfontscript{Myanmar}{mymr}
                                            \verb|\newfontscript{Ogham}{ ogam}|
1776 \newfontscript{N'ko}{nko^}
1777 \newfontscript{Old~Italic}{ital}
1778 \newfontscript{Old~Persian~Cuneiform}{xpeo}
1779 \newfontscript{Oriya}{orya}
                                            \newfontscript{Osmanya}{osma}
```

```
1780 \newfontscript{Phags-pa}{phag}
                                         \newfontscript{Phoenician}{phnx}
1781 \newfontscript{Runic}{runr}
                                         \newfontscript{Shavian}{shaw}
1782 \newfontscript{Sinhala}{sinh}
1783 \newfontscript{Sumero-Akkadian~Cuneiform}{xsux}
1784 \newfontscript{Syloti~Nagri}{sylo}
                                         \newfontscript{Syriac}{syrc}
1785 \newfontscript{Tagalog}{tglg}
                                         \newfontscript{Tagbanwa}{tagb}
1786 \newfontscript{Tai~Le}{tale}
                                         \newfontscript{Tai~Lu}{talu}
1787 \newfontscript{Tamil}{taml}
                                         \newfontscript{Telugu}{telu}
1788 \newfontscript{Thaana}{thaa}
                                         \newfontscript{Thai}{thai}
1789 \newfontscript{Tibetan}{tibt}
                                         \newfontscript{Tifinagh}{tfng}
For convenience:
1791 \newfontscript{Kana}{kana}
1792 \newfontscript{Maths}{math}
1793 \newfontscript{CJK}{hani}
 23.10.22 Language
1794 \newfontlanguage{Abaza}{ABA}\newfontlanguage{Abkhazian}{ABK}
1795 \newfontlanguage{Adyghe}{ADY}\newfontlanguage{Afrikaans}{AFK}
1796 \verb| newfontlanguage{Afar}{AFR} \verb| newfontlanguage{Agaw}{AGW}|
1798 \newfontlanguage \{Arabic\} \{ARA\} \newfontlanguage \{Aari\} \{ARI\} \}
1799 \newfontlanguage{Arakanese}{ARK}\newfontlanguage{Assamese}{ASM}
1800 \newfontlanguage{Athapaskan}{ATH}\newfontlanguage{Avar}{AVR}
1801 \newfontlanguage{Awadhi}{AWA} \newfontlanguage{Aymara}{AYM} \\
1802 \newfontlanguage{Azeri}{AZE}\newfontlanguage{Badaga}{BAD}
1803 \newfontlanguage{Baghelkhandi}{BAG}\newfontlanguage{Balkar}{BAL}
1804 \newfontlanguage{Baule}{BAU}\newfontlanguage{Berber}{BBR}
1805 \newfontlanguage{Bench}{BCH}\newfontlanguage{Bible~Cree}{BCR}
1806 \verb| newfontlanguage{Belarussian}{BEL} \verb| newfontlanguage{Bemba}{BEM}| \\
1808 \newfontlanguage \{Bhili\} \{BHI\} \newfontlanguage \{Bhojpuri\} \{BHO\} \}
1809 \newfontlanguage{Bikol}{BIK}\newfontlanguage{Bilen}{BIL}
1810 \verb| hewfontlanguage{Blackfoot}{BKF} \verb| hewfontlanguage{Balochi}{BLI}| \\
1812 \newfontlanguage\{Bambara\}\{BMB\} \newfontlanguage\{Bamileke\}\{BML\}
1813 \verb| hewfontlanguage{Breton}{BRE} \verb| hewfontlanguage{Brahui}{BRH}|
1814 \newfontlanguage{Braj~Bhasha}{BRI}\newfontlanguage{Burmese}{BRM}
1815 \newfontlanguage{Bashkir}{BSH}\newfontlanguage{Beti}{BTI}
1816 \verb| newfontlanguage{Catalan}{CAT} \verb| newfontlanguage{Cebuano}{CEB}|
1818 \verb| newfontlanguage{Chattisgarhi}{CHH} \verb| newfontlanguage{Chichewa}{CHI}| \\
1819 \newfontlanguage{Chukchi}{CHK}\newfontlanguage{Chipewyan}{CHP}
1820 \newfontlanguage{Cherokee}{CHR}\newfontlanguage{Chuvash}{CHU}
1821 \newfontlanguage{Comorian}{CMR}\newfontlanguage{Coptic}{COP}
```

1823 \newfontlanguage{Crimean~Tatar}{CRT}\newfontlanguage{Church~Slavonic}{CSL}

1822 \newfontlanguage{Cree}{CRE}\newfontlanguage{Carrier}{CRR}

 $1826 \verb| newfontlanguage{German}{DEU}|$

```
1828 \verb| newfontlanguage{Djerma}{DJR} \verb| newfontlanguage{Dangme}{DNG}|
1829 \newfontlanguage{Dinka}{DNK}\newfontlanguage{Dungan}{DUN}
1830 \newfontlanguage{Dzongkha}{DZN}\newfontlanguage{Ebira}{EBI}
1831 \ \ larguage{Edo}{EDO}
1832 \newfontlanguage{Efik}{EFI}\newfontlanguage{Greek}{ELL}
1833 \newfontlanguage{English}{ENG}\newfontlanguage{Erzya}{ERZ}
1834 \newfontlanguage{Spanish}{ESP}\newfontlanguage{Estonian}{ETI}
1835 \newfontlanguage{Basque}{EUQ}\newfontlanguage{Evenki}{EVK}
1836 \newfontlanguage{Even}{EVN}\newfontlanguage{Ewe}{EWE}
1837 \newfontlanguage{French~Antillean}{FAN}
1838 \newfontlanguage{Farsi}{FAR}
1839 \newfontlanguage{Parsi}{FAR}
1840 \newfontlanguage{Persian}{FAR}
1841 \newfontlanguage{Finnish}{FIN}\newfontlanguage{Fijian}{FJI}
1842 \newfontlanguage{Flemish}{FLE}\newfontlanguage{Forest~Nenets}{FNE}
1843 \newfontlanguage{Fon}{FON}\newfontlanguage{Faroese}{FOS}
1844 \newfontlanguage{French}{FRA}\newfontlanguage{Frisian}{FRI}
1845 \newfontlanguage{Friulian}{FRL}\newfontlanguage{Futa}{FTA}
1846 \newfontlanguage{Fulani}{FUL}\newfontlanguage{Ga}{GAD}
1847 \newfontlanguage \{Gaelic\} \{GAE\} \newfontlanguage \{Gagauz\} \{GAG\} \}
1848 \newfontlanguage \{Galician\} \{GAL\} \newfontlanguage \{Garshuni\} \{GAR\} \}
1849 \newfontlanguage \{Garhwali\} \{GAW\} \newfontlanguage \{Ge'ez\} \{GEZ\} \} \\
1850 \newfontlanguage{Gilyak}{GIL}\newfontlanguage{Gumuz}{GMZ}
1852 \newfontlanguage \{Garo\} \{GRO\} \newfontlanguage \{Guarani\} \{GUA\} \}
1853 \newfontlanguage{Gujarati}{GUJ}\newfontlanguage{Haitian}{HAI}
1854 \newfontlanguage{Halam}{HAL}\newfontlanguage{Harauti}{HAR}
1855 \newfontlanguage{Hausa}{HAU}\newfontlanguage{Hawaiin}{HAW}
1856 \newfontlanguage{Hammer-Banna}{HBN}\newfontlanguage{Hiligaynon}{HIL}
1857 \newfontlanguage{Hindi}{HIN}\newfontlanguage{High~Mari}{HMA}
1858 \newfontlanguage{Hindko}{HND}\newfontlanguage{Ho}{HO}
1859 \newfontlanguage{Harari}{HRI}\newfontlanguage{Croatian}{HRV}
1860 \newfontlanguage{Hungarian}{HUN}\newfontlanguage{Armenian}{HYE}
1861 \newfontlanguage{Igbo}{IBO}\newfontlanguage{Ijo}{IJO}
1862 \newfontlanguage{Ilokano}{ILO}\newfontlanguage{Indonesian}{IND}
1863 \newfontlanguage{Ingush}{ING}\newfontlanguage{Inuktitut}{INU}
1864 \newfontlanguage{Irish}{IRI}\newfontlanguage{Irish~Traditional}{IRT}
1865 \newfontlanguage{Icelandic}{ISL}\newfontlanguage{Inari~Sami}{ISM}
1866 \verb| newfontlanguage{Italian}{ITA} \verb| newfontlanguage{Hebrew}{IWR}|
1867 \newfontlanguage{Javanese}{JAV}\newfontlanguage{Yiddish}{JII}
1868 \newfontlanguage{Japanese}{JAN}\newfontlanguage{Judezmo}{JUD}
1869 \newfontlanguage{Jula}{JUL} \newfontlanguage{Kabardian}{KAB}
1870 \newfontlanguage{Kachchi}{KAC}\newfontlanguage{Kalenjin}{KAL}
1872 \newfontlanguage{Georgian}{KAT}\newfontlanguage{Kazakh}{KAZ}
1873 \newfontlanguage{Kebena}{KEB}\newfontlanguage{Khutsuri~Georgian}{KGE}
1874 \newfontlanguage{Khakass}{KHA}\newfontlanguage{Khanty-Kazim}{KHK}
1875 \newfontlanguage{Khmer}{KHM}\newfontlanguage{Khanty-Shurishkar}{KHS}
1876 \newfontlanguage{Khanty-Vakhi}{KHV}\newfontlanguage{Khowar}{KHW}
1877 \newfontlanguage{Kikuyu}{KIK}\newfontlanguage{Kirghiz}{KIR}
1878 \newfontlanguage{Kisii}{KIS}\newfontlanguage{Kokni}{KKN}
```

```
1880 \newfontlanguage{Kumaoni}{KMN}\newfontlanguage{Komo}{KMO}
1881 \newfontlanguage{Komso}{KMS}\newfontlanguage{Kanuri}{KNR}
1882 \end{are} Kodagu \end{are} KoD \end{are} Korean \end{are} KOH \en
1883 \newfontlanguage{Konkani}{KOK}\newfontlanguage{Kikongo}{KON}
1884 \newfontlanguage{Komi-Permyak}{KOP}\newfontlanguage{Korean}{KOR}
1885 \newfontlanguage{Komi-Zyrian}{KOZ}\newfontlanguage{Kpelle}{KPL}
1887 \newfontlanguage{Karelian}{KRL}\newfontlanguage{Karaim}{KRM}
1888 \newfontlanguage{Karen}{KRN}\newfontlanguage{Koorete}{KRT}
1889 \verb| hewfontlanguage{Kashmiri}{KSH} \verb| hewfontlanguage{Khasi}{KSI}| \\
1890 \newfontlanguage{Kildin~Sami}{KSM}\newfontlanguage{Kui}{KUI}
1891 \newfontlanguage{Kulvi}{KUL}\newfontlanguage{Kumyk}{KUM}
1892 \newfontlanguage{Kurdish}{KUR}\newfontlanguage{Kurukh}{KUU}
1893 \newfontlanguage{Kuy}{KUY}\newfontlanguage{Koryak}{KYK}
1894 \newfontlanguage{Ladin}{LAD}\newfontlanguage{Lahuli}{LAH}
1895 \newfontlanguage{Lak}{LAK}\newfontlanguage{Lambani}{LAM}
1896 \newfontlanguage{Lao}{LAO}\newfontlanguage{Latin}{LAT}
1897 \newfontlanguage{Laz}{LAZ}\newfontlanguage{L-Cree}{LCR}
1898 \newfontlanguage{Ladakhi}{LDK}\newfontlanguage{Lezgi}{LEZ}
1899 \newfontlanguage{Lingala}{LIN}\newfontlanguage{Low~Mari}{LMA}
1900 \newfontlanguage{Limbu}{LMB}\newfontlanguage{Lomwe}{LMW}
1901 \newfontlanguage{Lower~Sorbian}{LSB}\newfontlanguage{Lule~Sami}{LSM}
1903 \newfontlanguage{Luganda}{LUG}\newfontlanguage{Luhya}{LUH}
1904 \newfontlanguage{Luo}{LUO}\newfontlanguage{Latvian}{LVI}
1905 \newfontlanguage\{Majang\}\{MAJ\}\newfontlanguage\{Makua\}\{MAK\}\}
1906 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam~Traditional}{MAL}\newfontlanguage{Mansi}{MAN}
1907 \newfontlanguage{Marathi}{MAR}\newfontlanguage{Marwari}{MAW}
1908 \newfontlanguage{Mbundu}{MBN}\newfontlanguage{Manchu}{MCH}
1909 \newfontlanguage{Moose~Cree}{MCR}\newfontlanguage{Mende}{MDE}
1910 \newfontlanguage{Me'en}{MEN}\newfontlanguage{Mizo}{MIZ}
1911 \newfontlanguage{Macedonian}{MKD}\newfontlanguage{Male}{MLE}
1912 \newfontlanguage{Malagasy}{MLG}\newfontlanguage{Malinke}{MLN}
1913 \newfontlanguage{Malayalam~Reformed}{MLR}\newfontlanguage{Malay}{MLY}
1914 \newfontlanguage{Mandinka}{MND}\newfontlanguage{Mongolian}{MNG}
1915 \newfontlanguage{Manipuri}{MNI}\newfontlanguage{Maninka}{MNK}
1916 \newfontlanguage{Manx~Gaelic}{MNX}\newfontlanguage{Moksha}{MOK}
1918 \newfontlanguage{Moroccan}{MOR}\newfontlanguage{Maori}{MRI}
1919 \newfontlanguage{Maithili}{MTH}\newfontlanguage{Maltese}{MTS}
\label{thm:local_self_mundari} $$ \operatorname{MUN}\rightarrow \operatorname{Naga-Assamese}_{NAG} $$ $$ \operatorname{MUN}\rightarrow \operatorname{MUN}\rightarrow \operatorname{MUN}_{NAG} $$
1921 \newfontlanguage{Nanai}{NAN}\newfontlanguage{Naskapi}{NAS}
\label{lem:lem:newfontlanguage} $$1922 \newfontlanguage{N-Cree}_{NCR}\rightarrow {NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}_{NDB}
1923 \newfontlanguage{Ndonga}{NDG}\newfontlanguage{Nepali}{NEP}
1924 \newfontlanguage{Newari}{NEW}\newfontlanguage{Nagari}{NGR}
1925 \newfontlanguage{Norway~House~Cree}{NHC}\newfontlanguage{Nisi}{NIS}
1926 \newfontlanguage{Niuean}{NIU}\newfontlanguage{Nkole}{NKL}
1927 \newfontlanguage{N'ko}{NKO}\newfontlanguage{Dutch}{NLD}
1928 \newfontlanguage{Nogai}{NOG}\newfontlanguage{Norwegian}{NOR}
1929 \newfontlanguage{Northern~Sami}{NSM}\newfontlanguage{Northern~Tai}{NTA}
```

```
1931 \newfontlanguage{Oji-Cree}{OCR}\newfontlanguage{Ojibway}{OJB}
1932 \newfontlanguage{Oriya}{ORI}\newfontlanguage{Oromo}{ORO}
1934 \newfontlanguage{Pali}{PAL}\newfontlanguage{Punjabi}{PAN}
1935 \newfontlanguage{Palpa}{PAP}\newfontlanguage{Pashto}{PAS}
1936 \newfontlanguage{Polytonic~Greek}{PGR}\newfontlanguage{Pilipino}{PIL}
1937 \verb| newfontlanguage{Palaung}{PLG} \verb| newfontlanguage{Polish}{PLK}|
1938 \newfontlanguage{Provencal}{PRO}\newfontlanguage{Portuguese}{PTG}
1939 \newfontlanguage{Chin}{QIN}\newfontlanguage{Rajasthani}{RAJ}
1941 \newfontlanguage{Riang}{RIA}\newfontlanguage{Rhaeto-Romanic}{RMS}
1942 \newfontlanguage{Romanian}{ROM}\newfontlanguage{Romany}{ROY}
1944 \newfontlanguage{Russian}{RUS}\newfontlanguage{Sadri}{SAD}
1945 \newfontlanguage{Sanskrit}{SAN}\newfontlanguage{Santali}{SAT}
1946 \newfontlanguage{Sayisi}{SAY}\newfontlanguage{Sekota}{SEK}
1947 \newfontlanguage{Selkup}{SEL}\newfontlanguage{Sango}{SGO}
1948 \verb| newfontlanguage{Shan}{SHN} \verb| newfontlanguage{Sibe}{SIB}|
1949 \newfontlanguage{Sidamo}{SID}\newfontlanguage{Silte~Gurage}{SIG}
1950 \newfontlanguage{Skolt~Sami}{SKS}\\newfontlanguage{Slovak}{SKY}
1951 \newfontlanguage{Slavey}{SLA}\newfontlanguage{Slovenian}{SLV}
1952 \newfontlanguage{Somali}{SML}\newfontlanguage{Samoan}{SMO}
\label{lem:signal} $$1953 \rightarrow SNA}\rightarrow SNA}\rightarrow SNA}\
1954 \newfontlanguage{Sinhalese}{SNH}\newfontlanguage{Soninke}{SNK}
1955 \newfontlanguage{Sodo~Gurage}{SOG}\newfontlanguage{Sotho}{SOT}
1956 \newfontlanguage{Albanian}{SQI}\newfontlanguage{Serbian}{SRB}
1957 \newfontlanguage{Saraiki}{SRK}\newfontlanguage{Serer}{SRR}
1958 \newfontlanguage{South~Slavey}{SSL}\newfontlanguage{Southern~Sami}{SSM}
1959 \newfontlanguage{Suri}{SUR}\newfontlanguage{Svan}{SVA}
1960 \newfontlanguage{Swedish}{SVE}\newfontlanguage{Swadaya~Aramaic}{SWA}
1961 \newfontlanguage{Swahili}{SWK}\newfontlanguage{Swazi}{SWZ}
1962 \newfontlanguage{Sutu}{SXT}\newfontlanguage{Syriac}{SYR}
1963 \newfontlanguage{Tabasaran}{TAB} \newfontlanguage{Tajiki}{TAJ}
1964 \newfontlanguage{Tamil}{TAM}\newfontlanguage{Tatar}{TAT}
1965 \newfontlanguage{TH-Cree}{TCR}\newfontlanguage{Telugu}{TEL}
1966 \newfontlanguage{Tongan}{TGN}\newfontlanguage{Tigre}{TGR}
1967 \newfontlanguage{Tigrinya}{TGY}\newfontlanguage{Thai}{THA}
1968 \newfontlanguage{Tahitian}{THT}\newfontlanguage{Tibetan}{TIB}
1969 \verb| hewfontlanguage{Turkmen}{TKM} \verb| hewfontlanguage{Temne}{TMN}| \\
1970 \newfontlanguage{Tswana}{TNA}\newfontlanguage{Tundra~Nenets}{TNE}
1971 \newfontlanguage{Tonga}{TNG}\newfontlanguage{Todo}{TOD}
1972 \newfontlanguage{Tsonga}{TSG}\newfontlanguage{Turoyo~Aramaic}{TUA}
1973 \newfontlanguage{Tulu}{TUL} \newfontlanguage{Tuvin}{TUV}
1974 \newfontlanguage{Twi}{TWI} \newfontlanguage{Udmurt}{UDM}
1975 \newfontlanguage{Ukrainian}{UKR}\newfontlanguage{Urdu}{URD}
1976 \newfontlanguage{Upper~Sorbian}{USB}\newfontlanguage{Uyghur}{UYG}
1977 \newfontlanguage{Uzbek}{UZB}\newfontlanguage{Venda}{VEN}
1978 \newfontlanguage{Vietnamese}{VIT}\newfontlanguage{Wa}{WA}
1979 \newfontlanguage{Wagdi}{WAG}\newfontlanguage{West-Cree}{WCR}
1980 \newfontlanguage{Welsh}{WEL} \newfontlanguage{Wolof}{WLF}
```

```
1981 \newfontlanguage{Tai~Lue}{XBD}\newfontlanguage{Xhosa}{XHS}
1982 \newfontlanguage{Yakut}{YAK}\newfontlanguage{Yoruba}{YBA}
1983 \newfontlanguage{Y-Cree}{YCR}\newfontlanguage{Yi~Classic}{YIC}
1984 \newfontlanguage{Yi~Modern}{YIM}\newfontlanguage{Chinese~Hong~Kong}{ZHH}
1985 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Phonetic}{ZHP}\newfontlanguage{Chinese~Simplified}{ZHS}
1986 \newfontlanguage{Chinese~Traditional}{ZHT}\newfontlanguage{Zande}{ZND}
1987 \newfontlanguage{Zulu}{ZUL}
```

Turkish Turns out that many fonts use 'TUR' as their Turkish language tag rather than the specified 'TRK'. So we check for both:

```
1988 \define@key[zf@feat]{Lang}{Turkish}[]{
     \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {TRK} {
1990
       \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
1991
       \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+lang=Turkish}
       \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TRK}
1992
1993
     }{
       \fontspec_check_lang:nTF {TUR} {
1994
          \int_set:Nn \l_fontspec_language_int {\l_fontspec_strnum_int}
1995
1996
          \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+lang=Turkish}
          \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {TUR}
1997
1998
       }{
1999
          \fontspec_warning:nx {language-not-exist} {#1}
2000
          \setkeys[zf@feat]{Lang}{Default}
2001
       }
2002
     }
2003 }
```

Default

```
2004 \define@key[zf@feat]{Lang}{Default}[]{
2005 \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+lang=dflt}}
2006 \tl_set:Nn \l_fontspec_lang_tl {DFLT}}
2007 \int_zero:N \l_fontspec_language_int
2008 }
```

23.10.23 Raw feature string

This allows savvy X_HT_EX-ers to input font features manually if they have already memorised the OpenType abbreviations and don't mind not having error checking.

```
2009 \define@key[zf]{options}{RawFeature}{
2010 \fontspec_update_fontid:n {+Raw:#1}
2011 \fontspec_update_featstr:n{#1}
2012 }
```

23.11 Italic small caps

The following code for utilising italic small caps sensibly is inspired from Philip Lehman's *The Font Installation Guide*. Note that \upshape needs to be used *twice* to get from italic small caps to regular upright (it always goes to small caps, then regular upright).

\sishape First, the commands for actually selecting italic small caps are defined. I use si as the NFSS shape for italic small caps, but I have seen itsc and slsc also used. \sidefault may be redefined to one of these if required for compatibility.

```
2013 \providecommand*{\sidefault}{si}
2014 \DeclareRobustCommand{\sishape}{
2015 \not@math@alphabet\sishape\relax
2016 \fontshape\sidefault\selectfont
2017 }
2018 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textsi}{\sishape}
```

\fontspec_blend_shape:nnn

This is the macro which enables the overload on the \...shape commands. It takes three such arguments. In essence, the macro selects the first argument, unless the second argument is already selected, in which case it selects the third.

```
2019 \cs_new:Nn \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn {
2020    \bool_if:nTF
2021    {
2022    \str_if_eq_p:xx {\f@shape} {#2} &&
2023    \cs_if_exist_p:c {\f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/#3}}
2024    }
2025    { \fontshape{#3}\selectfont }
2026    { \fontshape{#1}\selectfont }
2027 }
```

\itshape Here the original \... shape commands are redefined to use the merge shape macro.

```
\scshape 2028 \DeclareRobustCommand \itshape {
\upshape 2029
              \not@math@alphabet\itshape\mathit
         2030
              \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn\itdefault\scdefault\sidefault
         2031 }
         2032 \DeclareRobustCommand \slshape {
         2033 \not@math@alphabet\slshape\relax
              \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn\sldefault\scdefault\sidefault
         2034
         2035 }
         2036 \DeclareRobustCommand \scshape {
         2037 \not@math@alphabet\scshape\relax
         2038 \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn\scdefault\itdefault\sidefault
         2039 }
         2040 \DeclareRobustCommand \upshape {
         2041 \not@math@alphabet\upshape\relax
         2042 \fontspec_blend_shape:nnn\updefault\sidefault\scdefault
         2043 }
```

23.12 Selecting maths fonts

Here, the fonts used in math mode are redefined to correspond to the default roman, sans serif and typewriter fonts. Unfortunately, you can only define maths fonts in the preamble, otherwise I'd run this code whenever \setmainfont and friends was run.

\fontspec_setup_maths:

Everything here is performed \AtBeginDocument in order to overwrite euler's attempt. This means fontspec must be loaded *after* euler. We set up a conditional to return an error if this rule is violated.

Since every maths setup is slightly different, we also take different paths for defining various math glyphs depending which maths font package has been loaded.

```
2044 \@ifpackageloaded{euler}{
     \verb|\bool_set_true:N \g_fontspec_package_euler_loaded_bool|
2046 }{
      \bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_package_euler_loaded_bool
2047
2048 }
2049 \cs_set:Nn \fontspec_setup_maths: {
     \@ifpackageloaded{euler}{
2051
        \bool_if:NTF \g_fontspec_package_euler_loaded_bool {
2052
          \bool_set_true:N \g_fontspec_math_euler_bool
2053
       }{
          \fontspec_error:n {euler-too-late}
2054
2055
       }
2056
     }{}
      \@ifpackageloaded{lucbmath}{\bool_set_true:N \g_fontspec_math_lucida_bool}{}
2057
      \@ifpackageloaded{lucidabr}{\bool_set_true:N \g_fontspec_math_lucida_bool}{}
2058
      \@ifpackageloaded{lucimatx}{\bool_set_true:N \g_fontspec_math_lucida_bool}{}
```

Knuth's CM fonts fonts are all squashed together, combining letters, accents, text symbols and maths symbols all in the one font, cmr, plus other things in other fonts. Because we are changing the roman font in the document, we need to redefine all of the maths glyphs in LaTeX's operators maths font to still go back to the legacy cmr font for all these random glyphs, unless a separate maths font package has been loaded instead.

In every case, the maths accents are always taken from the operators font, which is generally the main text font. (Actually, there is a \hat{l} that accent in EulerFractur, but it's ugly. So I ignore it. Sorry if this causes inconvenience.)

```
\DeclareSymbolFont{legacymaths}{OT1}{cmr}{m}{n}
2061
     \SetSymbolFont{legacymaths}{bold}{OT1}{cmr}{bx}{n}
2062
     \DeclareMathAccent{\acute} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{19}
     \DeclareMathAccent{\grave} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{18}
2063
    \DeclareMathAccent{\ddot}
2064
                                  {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{127}
     \DeclareMathAccent{\tilde} {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{126}
2065
2066
     \DeclareMathAccent{\bar}
                                  {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{22}
2067
     \DeclareMathAccent{\breve}
                                  {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{21}
     \DeclareMathAccent{\check}
                                  {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{20}
     \DeclareMathAccent{\hat}
                                  {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{94} % too bad, euler
     \DeclareMathAccent{\dot}
                                  {\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{95}
     \DeclareMathAccent{\mathring}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{23}
```

\colon: what's going on? Okay, so: and \colon in maths mode are defined in a few places, so I need to work out what does what. Respectively, we have:

```
% fontmath.ltx:
\DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{"3A}
\DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{"3A}
% amsmath.sty:
```

```
\renewcommand{\colon}{\nobreak\mskip2mu\mathpunct{}\nonscript
\mkern-\thinmuskip{:}\mskip6muplus1mu\relax}

% euler.sty:
\DeclareMathSymbol{:}\mathrel {EulerFraktur}{"3A}

% lucbmath.sty:
\DeclareMathSymbol{\@tempb}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
\ifx\colon\@tempb
\DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{operators}{58}
\fi
\DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel}{operators}{58}
```

 $(3A_{-}16 = 58_{-}10)$ So I think, based on this summary, that it is fair to tell fontspec to 'replace' the operators font with legacymaths for this symbol, except when amsmath is loaded since we want to keep its definition.

```
2072 \group_begin:
2073 \mathchardef\@tempa="603A \relax
2074 \ifx\colon\@tempa
2075 \DeclareMathSymbol{\colon}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{58}
2076 \fi
2077 \group_end:
```

The following symbols are only defined specifically in euler, so skip them if that package is loaded.

```
2078 \bool_if:NF \g_fontspec_math_euler_bool {
2079  \DeclareMathSymbol{!}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{33}
2080  \DeclareMathSymbol{:}{\mathrel} {legacymaths}{58}
2081  \DeclareMathSymbol{;}{\mathpunct}{legacymaths}{59}
2082  \DeclareMathSymbol{?}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{63}
```

And these ones are defined both in euler and lucbmath, so we only need to run this code if no extra maths package has been loaded.

```
\bool_if:NF \g_fontspec_math_lucida_bool {
2083
2084
          \DeclareMathSymbol{0}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'0}
          \DeclareMathSymbol{1}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'1}
2085
          \DeclareMathSymbol{2}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'2}
2086
          \DeclareMathSymbol{3}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'3}
2087
          \DeclareMathSymbol{4}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'4}
2088
          \DeclareMathSymbol{5}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'5}
2089
          \DeclareMathSymbol{6}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'6}
2090
          \label{legacymaths} $$ \DeclareMathSymbol{7}{\mathcal P}_{\colored{A}}(\colored{B}) $$
2091
          \label{legacymaths} $$ \DeclareMathSymbol{8}{\mathbb{S}}_{\mathbf{0}} $$ $$ \Colored\\
2092
          \DeclareMathSymbol{9}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{'9}
2093
2094
          \DeclareMathSymbol{\Gamma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{0}
2095
          \DeclareMathSymbol{\Delta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{1}
2096
          \DeclareMathSymbol{\Theta}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{2}
          \DeclareMathSymbol{\Lambda}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{3}
2097
2098
          \DeclareMathSymbol{\Xi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{4}
2099
          \DeclareMathSymbol{\Pi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{5}
2100
          \DeclareMathSymbol{\Sigma}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{6}
```

```
2101
2102
       \DeclareMathSymbol{\Phi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{8}
2103
       \DeclareMathSymbol{\Psi}{\mathalpha}{legacymaths}{9}
2104
       \label{legacymaths} $$ \DeclareMathSymbol{\Omegaega}{\mathcal H}_{legacymaths}_{10} $$
2105
       \DeclareMathSymbol{+}{\mathbin}{legacymaths}{43}
2106
       \DeclareMathSymbol{=}{\mathrel}{legacymaths}{61}
2107
       \DeclareMathDelimiter{(){\mathopen} {legacymaths}{40}{largesymbols}{0}
2108
       \DeclareMathDelimiter{[]{\mathopen} {legacymaths}{91}{largesymbols}{2}
2109
       \DeclareMathDelimiter{]}{\mathclose}{legacymaths}{93}{largesymbols}{3}
2110
       2111
       \DeclareMathSymbol{\mathdollar}{\mathord}{legacymaths}{36}
2112
2113
2114
    }
```

Finally, we change the font definitions for \mathrm and so on. These are defined using the \g _fontspec_mathrm_tl (...) macros, which default to \rmdefault but may be specified with the \setmathrm (...) commands in the preamble.

Since LATEX only generally defines one level of boldness, we omit \mathbf in the bold maths series. It can be specified as per usual with \setboldmathrm, which stores the appropriate family name in \g_fontspec_bfmathrm_tl.

```
\DeclareSymbolFont{operators}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
     \SetSymbolFont{operators}{normal}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
2116
     \SetMathAlphabet\mathrm{normal}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
2117
     \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{normal}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl\mddefault\itdefault
2118
     \SetMathAlphabet\mathbf{normal}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
2119
     \SetMathAlphabet\mathsf{normal}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathsf_tl\mddefault\updefault
2120
     2121
2122
    \SetSymbolFont{operators}{bold}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
2123
     \tl_if_empty:NTF \g_fontspec_bfmathrm_tl {
      \SetMathAlphabet\mathrm{bold}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
2124
      \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{bold}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl\bfdefault\itdefault
2125
2126
    }{
      \SetMathAlphabet\mathrm{bold}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_bfmathrm_tl\mddefault\updefault
2127
      \SetMathAlphabet\mathbf{bold}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_bfmathrm_tl\bfdefault\updefault
2128
      \SetMathAlphabet\mathit{bold}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_bfmathrm_tl\mddefault\itdefault
2129
2130
     2131
     \SetMathAlphabet\mathtt{bold}\zf@enc\g_fontspec_mathtt_tl\bfdefault\updefault
2132
2133 }
```

\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:

We're a little less sophisticated about not executing the maths setup if various other maths font packages are loaded. This list is based on the wonderful 'LATEXFont Catalogue': http://www.tug.dk/FontCatalogue/mathfonts.html. I'm sure there are more I've missed. Do the TEX Gyre fonts have maths support yet?

Untested: would \unless\ifnum\Gamma=28672\relax\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool\fi be a better test? This needs more cooperation with euler and lucida, I think.

```
2134 \cs_new: Nn \fontspec_maybe_setup_maths: {
2135  \@ifpackageloaded{anttor}{
2136  \ifx\define@antt@mathversions a\bool_set_false: N \g_fontspec_math_bool\fi){}
2137  \@ifpackageloaded{arev}{\bool_set_false: N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
```

```
2138
2139
            \@ifpackageloaded{mathdesign}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
2140
            \@ifpackageloaded{concmath}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
2141
            \@ifpackageloaded{cmbright}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
            \@ifpackageloaded{mathesf}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
            \@ifpackageloaded{gfsartemisia}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
            \label{lemic} $$ \end{gfsneohellenic} \bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math\_bool} $$
2145
            \@ifpackageloaded{iwona}{
                \ifx\define@iwona@mathversions a\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool\fi}{}
2146
            \@ifpackageloaded{kpfonts}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
2147
            \@ifpackageloaded{kmath}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
2148
            \@ifpackageloaded{kurier}{
2149
                \ifx\define@kurier@mathversions a\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool\fi}{}
2150
2151
           \@ifpackageloaded{fouriernc}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
            \@ifpackageloaded{fourier}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
            \@ifpackageloaded{mathpazo}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
            \@ifpackageloaded{mathptmx}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
2154
2155
            \@ifpackageloaded{MinionPro}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
2156
            \@ifpackageloaded{unicode-math}{\bool_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool}{}
            \label{local_set_false:N \g_fontspec_math_bool} $$ \end{figure} $$ \end{figu
2157
2158
            \bool_if:NT \g_fontspec_math_bool {
2159
                \fontspec_info:n {setup-math}
2160
                 \fontspec_setup_maths:
2161
2162 }
2163 \AtBeginDocument{\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths:}
```

23.13 Finishing up

Now we just want to set up loading the .cfg file, if it exists.

```
2164\bool_if:NT \g_fontspec_cfg_bool {
2165 \InputIfFileExists{fontspec.cfg}
2166 {}
2167 {\typeout{No^ fontspec.cfg^ file^ found; no^ configuration^ loaded.}}
2168}
```

The end! Thanks for coming.

Part VIII

fontspec.lua

end

end

40

41

First we define some metadata.

```
1 fontspec
                    = { }
 3 fontspec.module = {
                   = "fontspec",
      name
      version
                   = 2.0,
 6
      date
                    = "2009/12/04",
      description = "Advanced font selection for LuaLaTeX.",
                   = "Khaled Hosny",
 8
      author
      copyright
                   = "Khaled Hosny",
 9
                    = "LPPL"
      license
10
11 }
12
13 luatexbase.provides_module(fontspec.module)
Some utility functions
16 utf = unicode.utf8
18 function fontspec.log
                           (...) luatexbase.module_log
                                                           (fontspec.module.name, string.format(...))
19 function fontspec.warning(...) luatexbase.module_warning(fontspec.module.name, string.format(...))
20 function fontspec.error (...) luatexbase.module_error (fontspec.module.name, string.format(...))
22 function fontspec.sprint (...) tex.sprint(luatexbase.catcodetables['latex-package'], ...) end
The following functions check for exsitence of certain script, language or feature
in a given font.
25 local function check_script(id, script)
      local s = string.lower(script)
27
      if id and id > 0 then
          local otfdata = fonts.ids[id].shared.otfdata
29
          if otfdata then
              local features = otfdata.luatex.features
30
31
              for i,_ in pairs(features) do
                  for j,_ in pairs(features[i]) do
32
                      if features[i][j][s] then
33
                          fontspec.log("script '%s' exists in font '%s'",
34
                                         script, fonts.ids[id].fullname)
35
36
                          return true
37
                      end
                  end
38
              end
39
```

```
42 end
43
44 local function check_language(id, language, script)
      local s = string.lower(script)
      local 1 = string.lower(language)
47
      if id and id > 0 then
48
          local otfdata = fonts.ids[id].shared.otfdata
49
          if otfdata then
               local features = otfdata.luatex.features
50
               for i,_ in pairs(features) do
51
                   for j,_ in pairs(features[i]) do
52
                       if features[i][j][s] and features[i][j][s][l] then
53
                           fontspec.log("language '%s' for script '%s' exists in font '%s'",
54
55
                                          language, script, fonts.ids[id].fullname)
56
                            return true
57
                       end
                   end
58
               end
59
60
          end
      end
61
62 end
63
64 local function check_feature(id, feature, language, script)
      local s = string.lower(script)
      local 1 = string.lower(language)
66
      local f = string.lower(feature:gsub("^[+-]", ""))
67
      if id and id > 0 then
68
          local otfdata = fonts.ids[id].shared.otfdata
69
          if otfdata then
70
               local features = otfdata.luatex.features
71
               for i,_ in pairs(features) do
72
73
                   if features[i][f] and features[i][f][s] then
74
                       if features[i][f][s][l] == true then
75
                           fontspec.log("feature '%s' for language '%s' and script '%s' exists in fon
76
                                          feature, language, script, fonts.ids[id].fullname)
77
                           return true
                       end
78
                   end
79
               end
80
          end
81
      end
82
83 end
The following are the function that get called from TEX end.
86\,local\,function\,temps watrue() \quad fontspec.sprint([[\@tempswatrue]]) \quad end
87 local function tempswafalse() fontspec.sprint([[\@tempswafalse]]) end
88
89 function fontspec.check_ot_script(fnt, script)
      if check_script(font.id(fnt), script) then
          tempswatrue()
```

```
else
92
           tempswafalse()
93
94
       end
95 end
97 function fontspec.check_ot_lang(fnt, lang, script)
98
       if check_{language}(font.id(fnt), lang, script) then
99
           tempswatrue()
100
       else
101
           tempswafalse()
102
       end
103 end
104
105 function fontspec.check_ot_feat(fnt, feat, lang, script)
       for _, f in ipairs { "+trep", "+tlig", "+anum" } do
           if feat == f then
107
108
               tempswatrue()
109
               return
110
           end
       end
111
       if check\_feature(font.id(fnt), feat, lang, script) then
112
113
           tempswatrue()
114
       else
115
           tempswafalse()
116
       end
117 end
118
```

Part IX

fontspec-patches.sty

1 \ExplSyntaxOn

23.14 Unicode footnote symbols

2 \RequirePackage{fixltx2e}[2006/03/24]

23.15 Emph

Redefinition of {\em ...} and \emph{...} to use NFSS info to detect when the inner shape should be used. \emph \emshape 3 \DeclareRobustCommand \em { \eminnershape 4 \@nomath\em 5 \str_if_eq:xxTF \f@shape \itdefault \eminnershape \str_if_eq:xxTF \f@shape \sldefault \eminnershape \emshape 8 } 9 } 10 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\emph}{\em} 11 \cs_set_eq:NN \emshape \itshape 12 \cs_set_eq:NN \eminnershape \upshape

23.16 \-

This macro is courtesy of Frank Mittelbach and the \LaTeX 2 source code.

```
13 \DeclareRobustCommand{\-}{%
   \discretionary{%
      \char\ifnum\hyphenchar\font<\z@
15
             \xlx@defaulthyphenchar
16
17
           \else
             \hyphenchar\font
18
19
           \fi}{}{}}
20 \def\xlx@defaulthyphenchar{'\-}
```

23.17 Verbatims

Many thanks to Apostolos Syropoulos for discovering this problem and writing the redefinion of LATEX's verbatim environment and $\vee \text{verb*}$ command.

\fontspec_visible_space:

Print U+2434: OPEN BOX, which is used to visibly display a space character.

```
21 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_visible_space: {
22 \font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF \font {"2423}
     {\char"2423\relax}
23
      {\fontspec_visible_space_fallback:}
24
25 }
```

```
26 \cs_new:Npn \fontspec_visible_space_fallback: {
```

```
28
                                29
                                      \textvisiblespace
                                30 }
                                31 }
                               Helper macro to turn spaces (^^20) active and print visible space instead.
fontspec_print_visible_spaces:
                                32 \group_begin:
                                33 \char_make_active:n{"20}%
                                34 \cs_gset:Npn\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:{%
                                35 \char_make_active:n{"20}%
                                36 \cs_set_eq:NN^^20\fontspec_visible_space:%
                                37 }%
                                38 \group_end:
                        \verb Redefine \verb to use \fontspec_print_visible_spaces:.
                       \verb*
                               39 \def\verb{
                                40 \relax\ifmmode\hbox\else\leavevmode\null\fi
                                41
                                   \bgroup
                                42
                                     \verb@eol@error \let\do\@makeother \dospecials
                                43
                                      \verbatim@font\@noligs
                                     \@ifstar\@@sverb\@verb
                                44
                               45 }
                                46 \def\@@sverb{\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:\@sverb}
                                   It's better to put small things into \AtBeginDocument, so here we go:
                                47 \AtBeginDocument{
                                48 \fontspec_patch_verbatim:
                                49 \fontspec_patch_moreverb:
                                50 \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb:
                                51 \fontspec_patch_listings:
                                52 }
                    verbatim*
                              With the verbatim package.
                                53 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_verbatim: {
                                   \@ifpackageloaded{verbatim}{
                                     \cs_set:cpn {verbatim*} {
                                56
                                        \group_begin: \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \verbatim@start
                                57
                                     }
                                58 }{
                               This is for vanilla LATEX.
                                      \cs_set:cpn {verbatim*} {
                                        \@verbatim \fontspec_print_visible_spaces: \@sxverbatim
                                60
                                61
                                     }
                                  }
                                62
                                63 }
                               This is for moreverb. The main listing* environment inherits this definition.
                                64 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_moreverb: {
                                65 \@ifpackageloaded{moreverb}{
                                     \cs_set:cpn {listingcont*} {
```

27 {

```
\cs_set:Npn \verbatim@processline {
 67
                                                                                           \label{listing@line \global\advance} $$ \end{advance} in e\c\_one $$ \c\_one $$ \c\_one
 68
                                                                                           \the\verbatim@line\par
   69
                                                                          }
 70
 71
                                                                          \verb|\ef{verbatim} $$ \ef{verbatim} $$ \ef{verbatim} $$ \ef{verbatim} $$ \ef{verbatim} $$ $$ \ef{verbatim} $$
 72
73
                                  }{}
74 }
                           listings and fancvrb make things nice and easy:
75\cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_fancyvrb: {
                              \@ifpackageloaded{fancyvrb}{
 77
                                                      \verb|\cs_set_eq:NN \ | FancyVerbSpace \ | fontspec_visible_space: \\
78 }{}
79 }
 80 \cs_set:Npn \fontspec_patch_listings: {
                                  \@ifpackageloaded{listings}{
                                                      \verb|\cs_set_eq:NN \lst@visiblespace \fontspec_visible_space: \\
 82
 83 }{}
 84 }
```

Part X fontspec.cfg

Index

Numbers written in italic refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in roman refer to the code lines where the entry is used.

Symbols	\bool_if:NF
\	. 722, 733, 826, 1000, 1206, 1326,
\@@sverb	1374, 1440, 1451, 1464, 2078, 2083
\@empty 438,	\bool_if:nF747
657, 1095, 1101, 1102, 1290, 1329, 1333	\bool_if:NT
\@ifpackageloaded 54,65,76,	666, 802, 889, 906, 917, 979, 1010,
81, 2044, 2050, 2057–2059, 2135,	1503, 1509, 1531, 1544, 2158, 2164
2137–2145, 2147–2149, 2151–2157	\bool_if:nT 1508
\@ifstar 44	\bool_if:NTF 451,465,
\@makeother 42	474, 491, 506, 519, 534, 549, 563,
\@noligs	640, 799, 976, 1007, 1499, 1744, 2051
\@nomath	\bool_if:nTF 1107,2020
\@onlypreamble	\bool_new:N
\@sverb	\bool_set_false:N . 257, 259, 605, 636,
\@sxverbatim	783–787, 951, 1254, 1265, 2047,
\@tempa	2136–2144, 2146–2148, 2150–2157
\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\	\bool_set_true:N
1381–1383, 1385, 1391, 1398, 1399	256, 258, 638, 789, 791, 793, 796,
	809, 952, 1195–1197, 1250, 1262,
\\(\text{0tempdimb} \) . \ 1353, 1354, 1382, 1386, 1392	1285, 1288, 2045, 2052, 2057–2059
\@tempdimc 1354, 1355, 1383, 1387, 1393	\bool_until_do:nn 1121,1144,1172
\@tempswafalse 87, 1120, 1143, 1171	\breve 2067
\@tempswatrue 86, 1124, 1147, 1176	
14	
\@verb	C
\@verbatim 56,60,71	\c_minus_one 1409
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792, 1420 \char 15, 23 \char_make_active:n 33, 35 \check 2068
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634,855
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634,855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533
$\begin{tabular}{lllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllll$	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792, 1420 \char 15, 23 \char_make_active:n 33, 35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634, 855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533 \clist_set_eq:NN 626, 1661, 1667,
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792, 1420 \char 15, 23 \char_make_active:n 33, 35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634, 855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533 \clist_set_eq:NN 626, 1661, 1667, 1672, 1678, 1682, 1688, 1732, 1738
$\begin{tabular}{lllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllll$	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634,855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533 \clist_set_eq:NN 626,1661,1667, 1672, 1678, 1682, 1688, 1732, 1738 \colon 2074, 2075
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634,855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533 \clist_set_eq:NN 626,1661,1667, 1672, 1678, 1682, 1688, 1732, 1738 \colon 2074, 2075 \colon@ 1429
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634,855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533 \clist_set_eq:NN 626,1661,1667, 1672, 1678, 1682, 1688, 1732, 1738 \colon 2074, 2075 \colon@ 1429 \convertcolorspec 1431
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634,855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533 \clist_set_eq:NN 626,1661,1667, 1672, 1678, 1682, 1688, 1732, 1738 \colon 2074, 2075 \colone@ 1429 \convertcolorspec 1431 \cs_generate_variant:Nn 58-
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634,855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533 \clist_set_eq:NN 626,1661,1667, 1672, 1678, 1682, 1688, 1732, 1738 \colon 2074, 2075 \colone 1429 \convertcolorspec 1431 \cs_generate_variant:Nn 58- 60, 690, 691, 998, 1019, 1105, 1300
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792, 1420 \char 15, 23 \char_make_active:n 33, 35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634, 855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533 \clist_set_eq:NN 626, 1661, 1667, 1672, 1678, 1682, 1688, 1732, 1738 \colon 2074, 2075 \color@ 1429 \convertcolorspec 1431 \cs_generate_variant:Nn 58- 60, 690, 691, 998, 1019, 1105, 1300 \cs_gset:Npn 34, 1198
\@verbatim	\c_minus_one 1409 \c_one 68 \c_zero 792,1420 \char 15,23 \char_make_active:n 33,35 \check 2068 \clist_clear:N 947 \clist_if_empty:NTF 842 \clist_map_break: 638 \clist_map_inline:Nn 634,855 \clist_put_right:Nn 1533 \clist_set_eq:NN 626,1661,1667, 1672, 1678, 1682, 1688, 1732, 1738 \colon 2074, 2075 \colone 1429 \convertcolorspec 1431 \cs_generate_variant:Nn 58- 60, 690, 691, 998, 1019, 1105, 1300

\cs_if_exist:NF	1301, 1305, 1309, 1313, 1317, 1321, 1325, 1331, 1335, 1336, 1339, 1372, 1396, 1401, 1405, 1427, 1459, 1472, 1485, 1489, 1493, 1497, 1518, 1522, 1526, 1530, 1543, 1581, 1660, 1671, 1681, 1731, 1743, 1988, 2004, 2009 \define@kurier@mathversions 2150 \Delta
578, 593, 642, 910, 953, 1094, 1097,	\document 281
1106, 1293, 1378, 1447, 1669, 1740 \cs_set_eq:cc 1051, 1052	\dospecials
\cs_set_eq:NN	E
313, 366, 391, 579, 619, 991, 993, 994	\edef 44,655
\csname	\else 17,
463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561	40, 361, 1101, 1102, 1126, 1149, 1178
\cyrillicencoding 279,282	\else: 589, 1130, 1134, 1153, 1159, 1182, 1191 \em
D	\eminnershape $\underline{3}$
\ddot 2064	$\label{eq:lemph} \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \$
\DeclareDocumentCommand	\emshape $\underline{3}$
295, 301, 305, 309, 314,	\endcsname 351, 356, 357, 374, 383,
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350,	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments:
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \DeclareFontFamily	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont* <u>64</u>
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \ \text{DeclareFontFamily} \cdot 609 \ \text{DeclareFontsExtensions} \cdot \cdot \delta 36	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \text{DeclareFontFamily}	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont* 64 verbatim* 53 \text{\text{\text{equteOptions}}} 587 \text{\text{\text{\text{ExecuteOptions}}} 268 \text{\text{\text{\text{exp}}}, 057, 337-339, 355, 876, 882} \text{\xitex{\text{
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \ \text{DeclareFontFamily}	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont* 64 verbatim* 53 \text{\texi\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi\text{\text{\tex
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \ \text{DeclareFontFamily}	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont* 64 verbatim* 53 \text{\text{\text{equteOptions}}} 587 \text{\text{\text{\text{ExecuteOptions}}} 268 \text{\text{\text{\text{exp}}}, 057, 337-339, 355, 876, 882} \text{\xitex{\text{
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \ \text{DeclareFontFamily}	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont* 64 verbatim* 53 \text{\texi\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi\text{\text{\tex
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \DeclareFontFamily	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \text{DeclareFontFamily}	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \text{DeclareFontFamily}	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 DeclareFontFamily	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 DeclareFontFamily	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \DeclareFontFamily	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 DeclareFontFamily	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 DeclareFontFamily	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 DeclareFontFamily	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 \text{DeclareFontFamily}	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*
317, 320, 323, 334, 343, 346, 350, 367, 373, 382, 392, 393, 396, 418, 436 DeclareFontFamily	463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532, 547, 561 environments: listingcont*

\fi: 591, 1130, 1134, 1153, 1159, 1182, 1191	\fontspec_get_features:n
\font . 15, 18, 22, 581, 584, 1352, 1364,	604, 844, 862, <u>910</u>
1391–1393, 1399, 1409, 1418, 1420	\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nn 448
\font_glyph_if_exist:Nn 586	\fontspec_if_aat_feature:nnTF \dots 1. 1 , 448
$\verb \font_glyph_if_exist:NnTF . 22, \underline{586}, 1415 $	\fontspec_if_current_language:n 559
\font_gset:Nnn 583,629	\fontspec_if_current_language:nTF <u>1</u> , <u>559</u>
\font_set:Nnn	\fontspec_if_current_script:n 545
450, 463, 472, 489, 504, 517,	\fontspec_if_current_script:nTF . $\underline{1}, \underline{545}$
532, 547, 561, 580, 627, 812, 813, 823	\fontspec_if_detect_external:n 632
\font_set_eq:NN 579	\fontspec_if_detect_external:nT 621,632
\fontdimen 1361, 1381,	\fontspec_if_feature:n 470
1385–1387, 1391–1393, 1398, 1399	\fontspec_if_feature:nnn 487
\fontencoding 296, 338	\fontspec_if_feature:nnnTF $\underline{1}$, $\underline{487}$
\fontfamily 339, 360	\fontspec_if_feature:nTF $\underline{1}$, $\underline{470}$
\fontname 814	\fontspec_if_fontspec_font: 441
\fontshape 2016, 2025, 2026	\fontspec_if_fontspec_font:TF
\fontspec <u>295</u>	<u>1</u> , <u>441</u> , 449,
\fontspec_blend_shape:nnn	462, 471, 488, 503, 516, 531, 546, 560
<u>2019</u> , 2030, 2034, 2038, 2042	\fontspec_if_language:n515
$fontspec_calc_scale:n$ 1342, 1343, 1349	\fontspec_if_language:nn 530
\fontspec_check_lang:n 1136	\fontspec_if_language:nnTF \dots 1, 530
\fontspec_check_lang:nTF	\fontspec_if_language:nTF $\underline{1}$, $\underline{515}$
426, 522, 537, <u>1136</u> , 1989, 1994	\fontspec_if_opentype: 461
\fontspec_check_ot_feat:n 1162	\fontspec_if_opentype:TF $\underline{1}$, $\underline{461}$
\fontspec_check_ot_feat:nT 968, $\underline{1161}$	\fontspec_if_script:n 502
\fontspec_check_ot_feat:nTF	\fontspec_if_script:nTF 1,502
479, 494, 1036, <u>1161</u>	\fontspec_info:n 74,678,1356,2159
\fontspec_check_script:n 1115	\fontspec_info:nx 75, 815, 874
\fontspec_check_script:nTF	\fontspec_info:nxx 76,607
404, 409, 507, 668, <u>1115</u>	\fontspec_init: 595, <u>928</u>
\fontspec_complete_fontname:Nn	\fontspec_iv_str_to_num:\Nn
	492, 493, 536, <u>1094</u> , 1117, 1138
1271, 1275, 1279, 1289, <u>1293</u> , 1337	\fontspec_iv_str_to_num:No 1112
\fontspec_declare_shape:nnnn	\fontspec_iv_str_to_num:w 1095, 1097
824, 828, 835, <u>841</u>	\fontspec_make_AAT_feature:nn 1011,1020
\fontspec_define_feature_option:nnnnn	\fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nn
1557–1580, 1591–1599, 1601–1608,	\fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nnT
1610, 1613–1626, 1628–1638, 1640–	981
1644, 1646, 1648–1654, 1656–1659,	\fontspec_make_AAT_feature_string:nnTF
1691–1701, 1703–1709, 1711–1730	
\fontspec_define_font_feature:n	\fontspec_make_feature:nnn
1647, 1655, 1690, 1702, 1710, 1742	\fontspec_make_feature:nnx
\fontspec_error:n 69, 861, 2054	\fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn
\fontspec_error:nx 70, 919, 1424	
\fontspec_fontwrap:n	718, 727, 736, 742, 765, 777 \fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnn, \fontspec_make_font_shapes:
577, 578, 581, 584, 847, 866	Trontspec_make_ront_snapes:mnn, trontspec_make_ront_snapes:
\fontspec_fullname:n 627,629,	\fontspec_make_font_shapes:nnnnn
642, 698, 709, 812, 813, 823, 848, 867	·
<u>044</u> , 070, 707, 014, 013, 043, 040, 807	724, 735, 754, 757, 761, 773

	I
\fontspec_make_ICU_feature:n	1323, 1329, 1333, 1346, 1373, 1397,
1008, 1016, 1032	1402, 1406, 1428, 1460, 1474, 1486,
\fontspec_make_ot_smallcaps:T	1490, 1494, 1501, 1504, 1515, 1519,
966, 977, 991	1523, 1527, 1535, 1548, 1583, 1586,
\fontspec_make_smallcaps:T 827, 966	1746, 1749, 1991, 1996, 2005, 2010
\fontspec_maybe_setup_maths: <u>2134</u>	\fontspec_v_str_to_num:Nn <u>1094</u> , 1169
\fontspec_nalt:n 1736, 1740	\fontspec_visible_space: . <u>21</u> , 36, 77, 82
\fontspec_namewrap:n 643,953,1198	\fontspec_visible_space:@fallback . <u>26</u>
\fontspec_new_lang:nn 420, 421, 423	\fontspec_visible_space_fallback: .
\fontspec_new_script:nn 398, 399, 401	
\fontspec_parse_colour:viii . 1438, 1447	\fontspec_warning:n 71,
\fontspec_patch_fancyvrb: 50,75	254, 362, 1022, 1034, 1478, 1482, 1510
\fontspec_patch_listings: 51,80	
\fontspec_patch_moreverb: 49,64	\fontspec_warning:nx 72,
	410, 413, 431, 1029, 1041, 1060,
\fontspec_patch_verbatim: 48,53	1220, 1224, 1441, 1452, 1465, 1999
\fontspec_preparse_features:nn 602, 620	\fontspec_warning:nxx 73,378,387
\fontspec_print_visible_spaces:	
\fontspec_salt:n 1665, 1669	G
\fontspec_save_family:n647	\g@addto@macro
\fontspec_save_family:nT 606, 647	\g_fontspec_bfmathrm_tl
\fontspec_save_fontinfo:nn 608, 690	318, 333, 2123, 2127–2129
\fontspec_select:nn 335, 355, 574, <u>593</u> , 619	\g_fontspec_cfg_bool 39, 258, 259, 2164
\fontspec_set_bold: 611, 721	\g_fontspec_default_fontopts_tl
\fontspec_set_bold_italic: 614, 746	201, 347, 349, 353, 623, 696, 707
\fontspec_set_bold_slanted: 615,770	\g_fontspec_hexcol_tl 914, 923, 948
\fontspec_set_family:Nnn <u>1</u> ,297,	\g_fontspec_math_bool 40, 256, 257,
302, 306, 310, 315, 318, 321, 324, <u>573</u>	2136–2144, 2146–2148, 2150–2158
\fontspec_set_font_dimen:NnN	\g_fontspec_math_euler_bool
	36, 2052, 2078
\fontspec_set_font_type: . 464, 473,	\g_fontspec_math_lucida_bool
490, 505, 518, 533, 548, 562, 628, <u>781</u>	37, 2057–2059, 2083
\fontspec_set_italic: 612, <u>732</u>	\g_fontspec_mathrm_tl
\fontspec_set_scriptlang: 603, 665	315, 330, 2115–2119, 2122, 2124, 2125
\fontspec_set_slanted: 613, 740	\g_fontspec_mathsf_t1 321, 331, 2120, 2131
\fontspec_set_upright: 610, 717	\g_fontspec_mathtt_t1 324,332,2121,2132
\fontspec_setkeys:xx 61,623,625,860,916	\g_fontspec_opacity_tl
\fontspec_setkeys:xxx	913, 923, 949, 1449, 1462
65, 674, 675, 685, 686	\g_fontspec_package_euler_loaded_bool
\fontspec_setup_maths: <u>2044</u> , 2160	38, 2045, 2047, 2051
\fontspec_tmp: 290, 293	\Gamma 2094
\fontspec_trace:n 77	\global 68,584
\fontspec_update_featstr:n 370,	\grave 2063
925, 999, 1027, 1039, 1403, 1475,	\group_begin:
1487, 1491, 1495, 1505, 1520, 1524,	32, 56, 352, 594, 821, 1350, 2072
1528, 1584, 1587, 1747, 1750, 2011	\group_end: . 38, 359, 617, 839, 1357, 2077
\fontspec_update_fontid:n	
369, 405, 427, <u>905</u> , 1026, 1038,	Н
1213, 1236, 1241, 1245, 1251, 1256,	\hat 2069
1263, 1267, 1272, 1276, 1280, 1286,	\hbox 40
1290, 1303, 1307, 1311, 1315, 1319,	\hyphenchar 15, 18, 1409, 1418, 1420

I	\l_fontspec_fontfeat_bf_clist
\if@tempswa	725, 728, 937, 1306, 1546
. 1130, 1134, 1153, 1159, 1182, 1191	\l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfit_clist
\ifcase	767, 939, 1314, 1537, 1550
\ifcsname 351, 374, 383	\l_fontspec_fontfeat_bfsl_clist
\ifmmode 40	
\ifnum 15,792,1123,1146,1174	\l_fontspec_fontfeat_clist 626,916
\ifx 1101, 1102, 2074, 2136, 2146, 2150	\l_fontspec_fontfeat_it_clist
\ignorespaces 299, 364	
\input 2	\l_fontspec_fontfeat_sc_clist
\InputIfFileExists	
\int_compare:nTF . 1072, 1214, 1434, 1437	\l_fontspec_fontfeat_sl_clist
\int_compare_p:nNn 1121,1144,1172	743, 940, 1318
\int_eval:n 1670, 1741	\l_fontspec_fontfeat_up_clist
\int_gincr:c	719, 936, 1302
\int_if_even:nTF 1076	\l_fontspec_fontid_tl
\int_incr:N 1127, 1150, 1179	
\int_new:c	\l_fontspec_fontname_bf_tl . 723, 727, 750, 761, 928, 1255, 1547
\int_new:N 41–43	\l_fontspec_fontname_bfit_tl
\int_set:Nn	748, 765, 932, 1271, 1539, 1552
59, 407, 429, 1098, 1118, 1125, 1139, 1148, 1164, 1177, 1990, 1995	\l_fontspec_fontname_bfsl_tl
\int_set:Nv	
\int_use:c	\l_fontspec_fontname_it_tl
\int_zero:N 1119, 1142, 1170, 2007	. 734, 736, 752, 757, 929, 1266, 1534
\itdefault 5,211,213,737,767,829,836,	\l_fontspec_fontname_sc_tl
879, 883, 2030, 2038, 2118, 2125, 2129	825, 834, 935, 1289
\itshape 11, <u>2028</u>	\l_fontspec_fontname_sl_tl
	741, 743, 772, 773, 933, 1275
K	\l_fontspec_fontname_tl 92, 139, 144,
\key@ifundefined 377, 386, 1055, 1057, 1059	149, 154, 159, 164, 169, 174, 225,
\keyval@alias@key	233, 596, 598, 600, 601, 624, 698,
394, <u>1050</u> , 1061, 1063, 1065, 1457	709, 718, 724, 735, 754, 822, 834,
L	848, 858, 1295, 1534, 1539, 1547, 1552 \l_fontspec_fontname_up_tl
\l_fontspec_atsui_bool	601, 624, 627, 629, 1244
32, 451, 784, 791, 799, 979, 1010	\l_fontspec_graphite_bool 35,787
	\l_fontspec_hexcol_tl
\l_fontspec_extensions_clist . 438,634	914, 922, 925, 1431, 1435, 1448
\l_fontspec_external_bool	\l_fontspec_hyphenchar_tl
\l_fontspec_fake_embolden_tl	\l_fontspec_icu_bool
931, 1536, 1538, 1545	33, 465, 474, 491, 506, 519,
\l_fontspec_fake_slant_tl	534, 549, 563, 785, 796, 802, 809,
930, 1532, 1549, 1551	889, 951, 976, 1007, 1499, 1508, 1744
\l_fontspec_feature_string_tl	\l_fontspec_lang_name_tl 165,
	671, 672, 675, 682, 683, 686, 945, 1240
\l_fontspec_firsttime_bool	\l_fontspec_lang_tl 428, 478, 704, 715,
	893, 902, 946, 1188, 1992, 1997, 2006 \\1_fontspec_language_int
1440, 1451, 1464, 1509, 1531, 1544	
1110, 1101, 1101, 1007, 1001, 1011	1 12, 127, 170, 170,

702, 713, 1167, 1174, 1990, 1995, 2007	\1_tmpb_font 813,814
\l_fontspec_mm_bool	\1_tmpb_int 1118, 1121, 1125,
34, 786, 793, 1503, 1508	1139, 1144, 1148, 1164, 1172, 1177
\l_fontspec_mode_tl 898, 959, 1225	\1_tmpb_tl 1074, 1078, 1080, 1083, 1086, 1089
\l_fontspec_nfss_tl 217, 845, 854, 864, 877	\Lambda
$local_loc$	\latinencoding 280, 283
28, 722, 747, 1195, 1250, 1254	\leavevmode 40
\l_fontspec_noit_bool	\let
29, 733, 1196, 1262, 1265	\listing@line 68
\l_fontspec_nosc_bool 30,826,1285,1288	listingcont* (environment) $\underline{64}$
$\l_{fontspec_opacity_tl} \dots$	\lst@visiblespace 82
913, 922, 925, 1449, 1455, 1462, 1468	\luatex_if_engine:T
\l_fontspec_optical_size_tl	18, 24, 597, 958, 1296, 1609
645, 956, 1500, 1514	\luatex_if_engine:TF 9
$\label{local_state} $1_{\text{fontspec_postadjust_tl}}$ 877,	\luatexpostexhyphenchar963
883, 915, 1389, 1390, 1399, 1409, 1417	\luatexposthyphenchar961
<pre>\l_fontspec_pre_feat_sclist</pre>	\luatexpreexhyphenchar962
	\luatexprehyphenchar 960, 1421
$local_loc$	\luatexRequireModule 11
699, 710, 849, 868, 911, 1001	M
\l_fontspec_renderer_tl	\mathalpha 2062-2071, 2084-2104
644, 798, 800, 803, 957, 1217	\mathbf
\l_fontspec_sc_featstr_sclist	\mathbin
828, 967, 969, 980, 982	\mathchardef 2073
\l_fontspec_scale_tl	\mathclose 2079, 2082, 2108, 2110
225, 846, 865, 912, 1345–1347, 1355	\mathdollar 2112
\l_fontspec_script_int	\mathit 110, 2029, 2118, 2125, 2129
41, 407, 475, 492, 521,	\mathopen 2107, 2109
536, 701, 712, 1140, 1146, 1166, 1174	\mathord 2111, 2112
\l_fontspec_script_name_tl	\mathpunct 2075, 2081
165, 175, 667, 670, 674, 685, 943, 1235	\mathrel 2080, 2106
\l_fontspec_script_tl	\mathring 2071
	\mathrm 2117, 2124, 2127
714, 890, 892, 899, 901, 944, 1157, 1188	\mathsf 2120, 2131
\l_fontspec_size_t1 857, 861, 865, 1335	\mathtt 2121, 2132
\l_fontspec_sizedfont_t1 858,867,1337	\mddefault 207, 208, 211, 212, 719, 737,
\l_fontspec_sizefeat_clist	743, 2115–2118, 2120, 2121, 2127, 2129
	\msg_error:nn 69
\l_fontspec_strnum_int	\msg_error:nnx 70
43, 407, 429, 1117, 1123,	\msg_fatal:nn
1138, 1146, 1169, 1175, 1990, 1995	\msg_info:nn 74
\l_fontspec_tfm_bool 31,783,789	\msg_info:nnx
\l_fontspec_tmpa_clist . 1661, 1667,	\msg_info:nnxx
1672, 1678, 1682, 1688, 1732, 1738	\msg_new:nnn 4, 78, 90, 128, 133,
\l_tmpa_bool 636, 638, 640	137, 142, 146, 151, 156, 161, 167,
\l_tmpa_font 812, 814	171, 178, 182, 186, 190, 195, 199,
\l_tmpa_int 1119, 1121, 1123,	203, 219, 223, 227, 231, 235, 240, 245
1125, 1127, 1142, 1144, 1146, 1148,	\msg_new:nnnn 83, 94, 102, 112, 120
1150, 1170, 1172, 1175, 1177, 1179	\msg_redirect_module:nnn
\l_tmpa_num 1211, 1214	261, 262, 265, 266
\l_tmpa_tl 1068, 1069, 1089, 1211, 1217, 1225	\msg_redirect_name:nnn 1479

\msg_trace:nn	\prop_gput:Nnn 690,691
\msg_warning:nn 71	\prop_new:c
\msg_warning:nnx	\providecommand
	· ·
\msg_warning:nnxx 73	\Psi 2103
\multi@alias@key 392, <u>1054</u>	
	Q
N	\q_nil
\newAATfeature	\q_stop 1375, 1378
\newcommand 950, 1050, 1054	, - '
\newcounter	R
	\real 1461
\newfontface	
\newfontfamily 9, $\underline{334}$	\relax 23,
\newfontfeature $\dots \dots \underline{367}$	40, 1081, 2015, 2033, 2037, 2041, 2073
\newfontinstance 9	\RequirePackage
\newfontlanguage <u>418</u> , 1794–1987	1, 2, 10, 270–272, 277, 287, 292
\newfontscript 396 , 1753–1793	\rmdefault 274,302,330
\newICUfeature 382	\rmfamily 1351,1364
 -	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
\newopentypefeature 382	S
\nhex	\scan_stop: 581, 584, 587, 1418, 1421
\normalfont 303, 307, 311	
\not@math@alphabet	\scdefault
2015, 2029, 2033, 2037, 2041	210, 829, 836, 2030, 2034, 2038, 2042
\null 40	\sclist_clear:N
\numexpr 1081	\sclist_gput_right:Nn 995,998
	\sclist_gput_right:Nx 1001
0	\sclist_new:N
\Omega 2104	\sclist_put_right:Nn <u>993</u>
\Omega	$\label{eq:sclist_put_right:Nn} $$ \scientification 1.00 (1.00) $$ scshape $$$
<u> </u>	
<u> </u>	\scshape
\or	\scshape
\or	$\begin{tabular}{lllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllll$
\or	\scshape
\or \ 790,795 P \par \ 69 \Phi \ 2102 \Pi \ 2099	\scshape
\or	\scshape
P \par	\scshape
P \par	\scshape
P \par	$\begin{tabular}{ l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l$
P \par	$\begin{tabular}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$
P \par	$\begin{array}{llllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllllll$
P \par	\scshape
P \text{\rmsq} \te	\scshape \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \
P \frac{\partial \partial \partia	\scshape
P \text{\range p} \range	\scshape
P \text{\range p} \range	\scshape
P \text{\range p} \range	\scshape

2000 0000	1 . 7 . 6
\slshape 2032, 2033	\tl_if_head_eq_charcode_p:nN 1109,1110
\space 97, 225, 233, 1074, 1078, 1081	\tl_if_in:nnT
\str_if_eq:nnF 54	\tl_if_single:nTF 1412
\str_if_eq:nnT 53	\tl_new:N 993
\str_if_eq:nnTF . 52,58,1364,1407,1477	\tl_new:Nn 948,949
\str_if_eq:nvTF 550, 564	\tl_put_left:Nn 1083
\str_if_eq:xxF 50,922	\tl_put_right:Nn 1409,1417,1546
\str_if_eq:xxT 49,879	\tl_put_right:Nx 864,1537,1550
\str_if_eq:xxTF 5,7,46,48,814	\tl_replace_all_in:Nnn . 598,1297,1300
\str_if_eq_p:nn 51	\tl_replace_all_in:Nnx 1295
\str_if_eq_p:xx 47,2022	\tl_set:cn
\string 110,130	\tl_set:Nn 273-276,347,406,428,535,
\strip@pt 1355	670, 672, 683, 800, 803, 887, 959,
	1205, 1235, 1240, 1294, 1332, 1335,
T	1413, 1414, 1435, 1448, 1455, 1500,
\tex_let:D 579	1514, 1532, 1545, 1992, 1997, 2006
\textsi <u>2013</u>	\tl_set:Nv 477, 478, 520, 1217, 1225
\textvisiblespace	\tl_set:Nx 438,596,822,834,845,
\the 69, 1391–1393, 1399	969, 982, 1068, 1074, 1078, 1080,
\thelisting@line 68	1089, 1345, 1347, 1389, 1399, 1468
\Theta 2096	\tl_set_eq:NN 278-
\tilde 2065	280, 282, 283, 575, 600, 601, 624,
\tl_clear:N	858, 913, 914, 1534, 1539, 1547, 1552
333, 349, 353, 854, 857, 912, 915,	\token_to_str:N
928–946, 956, 957, 967, 980, 994, 1210	\ttdefault
\tl_elt_count:n 1434,1437	\two@digits
\tl_gput_right:Nn	\typeout
	\typeout 210/
\L1 &DUL L1&UL:NX	
\tl_gput_right:Nx	U
\tl_gset:cV 712,713	U \unless
\tl_gset:cV	\unless

\verbatim@font 43 \verbatim@line 69 \verbatim@processline 67 \verbatim@start 56,71	\Xi
X	153, 158, 163, 1664, 1675, 1685, 1735
\xetex_if_engine:F 8	\XKV@tkey 148, 153, 158, 163
\xetex_if_engine:T 1201, 1234, 1239	\xlx@defaulthyphenchar 16,20
\xetex_if_engine:TF 16,21	,
$\xetex_or_luatex:nn \dots \underline{16}$	Z
285, 973, 1005, 1215, 1223, 1498, 1582	\z@ 15
\xetex_or_luatex:nnn <u>21</u> ,	\zap@space 438, 657, 1290, 1329, 1333
273, 577, 781, 887, 953, 1115, 1136,	\zf@basefont
1161, 1198, 1417, 1471, 1669, 1740	450, 463, 472, 489, 504, 517, 532,
\XeTeXcountvariations 792	547, 561, 627, 629, 630, 788, 792,
\XeTeXfeaturename 1068	823, 1068, 1072, 1074, 1078, 1081,
\XeTeXfonttype 788	1118, 1123, 1140, 1146, 1165, 1174,
\XeTeXisexclusivefeature 1072	1353, 1381, 1385–1387, 1398, 1415
\XeTeXOTcountfeatures 1165	\zf@enc 28, 273, 277-280, 282, 283,
\XeTeXOTcountlanguages 1140	296, 338, 609, 876, 882, 2115–2122,
\XeTeXOTcountscripts 1118	2124, 2125, 2127–2129, 2131, 2132
\XeTeXOTfeaturetag 1174	\zf@family 339,360,
\XeTeXOTlanguagetag 1146	575, 609, 661, 662, 694–697, 701–
\XeTeXOTscripttag 1123	704, 706–708, 712–715, 876, 882, 883
\XeTeXpicfile 290, 291, 293	\zf@fontspec
\XeTeXselectorname 1074, 1078, 1081	\zf@wordspace@parse 1378